



# THE FSC® NATIONAL FOREST STEWARDSHIP STANDARD OF CANADA

FSC-STD-CAN-01-2018 V 1-0 EN

<b>Title</b>	FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada
<b>Document reference code:</b>	FSC-STD-CAN-01-2018 EN
<b>Status:</b>	Approved
<b>Geographical scope:</b>	Canada
<b>Forest scope</b>	All forest types, except <i>small-scale forests*</i> , <i>low intensity forests*</i> and <i>community forests*</i> .
<b>Approval body</b>	FSC Policy and Standards Committee
<b>Submission date (to Performance and Standards Unit (PSU))</b>	27.02.2018
<b>Approval date</b>	19.10.2018
<b>Effective date</b>	01.01.2020
<b>Validity Period</b>	Five (5) years as of the effective date
<b>Country contact:</b>	Vivian Peachey Director of Standards FSC Canada 240 Richmond Street West Toronto, ON M5V 1V6 Canada Tel: +1(647) 528-0140 Email: <a href="mailto:v.peachey@ca.fsc.org">v.peachey@ca.fsc.org</a>
<b>FSC Performance and Standards Unit contact</b>	FSC International Center Performance and Standard Unit Adenauerallee 134 53113 Bonn, Germany Tel : +49-(0) 228 367 66-917 Fax : +49-(0) 228 367 66-30 Email : <a href="mailto:psu@fsc.org">psu@fsc.org</a>

A.C. All rights reserved.

No part of this work covered by the publisher's copyright may be reproduced or copied in any form or by any means, such as graphic, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, recording taping, or information retrieval systems) without the written permission of the publisher.

The Forest Stewardship Council® (FSC) is an independent, not-for-profit, non-governmental organization established to support environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial, and economically viable management of the world's forests.

FSC's vision is that the world's forests meet the social, ecological, and economic rights and needs of the present generation without compromising those of future generations.

Printed copies are for reference only. Please refer to the electronic copy on the FSC website ([ic.fsc.org](http://ic.fsc.org)) to ensure you are referring to the latest version.

### **Notes on Applicability**

This Standard does not apply to *small-scale forests\**, *low intensity forests\** and *community forests\**. Refer to Preamble section II - *Scope and Application of the Standard (Scale, Intensity & Risk\**. For these types of *forests\**, the Maritimes SLIMF Standard (2008), the British Columbia Small Operations Standards (2005) or the draft Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Standard (2010) will continue to apply until the new Canadian SIR Standard has been approved.

This version of the Standard does not address the requirements related to Motion 65 on *Intact Forest Landscapes\**. In the interim, refer to the Motion 65 Advice Note ADVICE-20-007-018 and to FSC Canada's *Interim Guidance for the Delineation of Intact Forest Landscapes (May 25, 2017)*.

The management and certification of *non-timber forest products\* (NTFPs\*)* is optional and may be applicable if a certification body has developed additional *NTFP\*-specific* interim standard requirements that meet ADVICE-20-007-05. FSC Canada plans to develop *Indicators\** specifically for maple syrup.

Please note that some adjustments may occur to the *Indicators\** of Criterion 10.7 following the approval of the version 3 of the *FSC Pesticides Policy*. Also, other *Indicators\** may be altered in future as determined by FSC International changes to policies and/or because of the implementation of General Assembly Motions.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREAMBLE .....	5
PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS .....	15
PRINCIPLE 2: WORKERS’* RIGHTS AND EMPLOYMENT CONDITIONS .....	19
PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES’* RIGHTS .....	22
PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS .....	29
PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST* .....	34
PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL VALUES* AND IMPACTS.....	38
PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....	64
PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT.....	68
PRINCIPLE 9: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES* .....	73
PRINCIPLE 10: IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES* .....	78
Annex A: Minimum list of <i>applicable laws*</i> , regulations and nationally ratified* international treaties, conventions and agreements .....	85
Annex B: Training Requirements for Workers* .....	86
Annex C: Worker’s* Health & Safety Program.....	87
Annex D: High Conservation Value* (HCV*) Framework.....	88
Annex E: Dispute Resolution .....	105
Annex F: Culturally Appropriate* Engagement* .....	109
Annex G: Caribou in the Standard .....	111
Annex H: Interim Indicators .....	116
Annex I: List of Contributors.....	126
GLOSSARY .....	132
REFERENCE LIST .....	158

# PREAMBLE

## I. Introduction

The Forest Stewardship Council® (FSC®) is an international non-profit organization founded in 1993 to support environmentally appropriate, socially beneficial, and economically viable management of the world's forests\*. FSC does this by setting standards for responsible forest management, which are then used by accredited certification bodies to assess the performance of participating organizations. Forest operations that meet these standards are permitted to use the FSC label on their products in the marketplace, thereby enabling consumers to choose and purchase products that come from forests\* managed according to FSC standards.

FSC ensures the credibility of its certification systems for the responsible management of the world's forest\* through oversight by Assurance Services International (ASI), which is an assurance partner for leading voluntary sustainability standards and initiatives around the world ([http://www. http://www.asi-assurance.org/](http://www.asi-assurance.org/)) and a member of the ISEAL Alliance (<https://www.isealalliance.org/>).

This FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada represents the Canadian adaptation of FSC's global *Principles\**, *Criteria\** (FSC-STD-01-001 V5-2) and International Generic Indicators (IGIs) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0). The national adaptation of this international framework ensures that the specific standard requirements are locally relevant, applicable and workable, as well as guaranteeing its integrity across the broader FSC system.

### Development of the FSC Canada Standard

In January 2013, FSC Canada membership voted in favour of developing one national standard for Canada, thus replacing Canada's four existing regional FSC Forest Management standards (i.e. National Boreal, Maritimes, British Columbia Standards and interim Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Standards) with a single standard that would apply to the whole country.

The FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada (hereafter referred to as the 'Standard') was developed by FSC Canada's Standard Development Group (SDG) and collaborators who worked to achieve *consensus\** among a wide range of people, organizations and interests.

The early stages of development formed six Technical Expert Panels (TEPs) to assist with scientific and cultural expertise, and recommendations related to several critical concepts within this Standard. Topics were identified through early public outreach efforts and surveys, and addressed the following: *Scale, Intensity & Risk\** (SIR), *Species-at-risk\**, *pesticides\** and conversion, ecological and operational considerations, as well as community, *stakeholder\** and Aboriginal rights.

The drafting of individual *Indicators\** was guided by two FSC International documents:

- FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0 EN International Generic Indicators; and
- FSC-PRO-60-006 V1-0 EN Development and Transfer of NFSS to FSC P&C V5

These documents outlined how the SDG were to use the International Generic Indicators (IGIs) as a baseline for drafting the new Standard. Also known as the 'transfer process,' the SDG had four options for interpreting each IGI.

1. **Adopt:** The SDG copies an International Generic Indicator into the new FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard.
2. **Adapt:** The SDG reviews and revises an International Generic Indicator in order to address terminology, scope or effectiveness in measuring conformance to a *Criterion\**.
3. **Drop:** The SDG may omit an International Generic Indicator where it is determined to be inapplicable or otherwise non-contributing in measuring conformance to a *Criterion\**.
4. **Add:** The SDG may suggest additional *Indicators\** in order to better establish conformance to a *Criterion\** as appropriate in a Canadian context.

Two draft versions of the Standard were submitted for public consultation and comment. In addition, a rigorous testing program evaluated the auditability and implementability of Draft 2 of the Standard, as well as several key topics and *Indicators\**. Under the direction and the discretion of the SDG, members reached out to sample chamber perspectives on the final version of the Standard.

The final draft Standard was submitted to the FSC Canada Board of Directors, who endorsed the submission of the Standard to FSC's Policy and Standards Committee for final approval.

### Structure of the Standard

The FSC Canada Standard maintains the internationally established hierarchical structure where:

- **Principles\*** are at the highest organizational level. These are the essential rules or elements of forest stewardship. FSC's Standard includes 10 *Principles\** as prescribed by FSC International. Each *Principle\** contains a series of *Criteria\**, which subdivide the *Principle\**.
- **Criteria\*** provide the means of judging if a *Principle\** has been fulfilled. Each *Criterion\** contains one or more *Indicators\**.
- **Indicators\*** are the components of the Standard that are directly applicable to *The Organizations\**. *Indicators\** contain the performance direction that *The Organizations\** must meet or to which they must adhere.

Together, the *Principles\** and *Criteria\** are the foundation of FSC certification, and are not subject to revision at the national or regional levels. *Indicators\** have been specifically customized and approved for application in the Canadian context. All *Principles\**, *Criteria\** and *Indicators\** share equal status, validity and authority, and apply at the level of the *Management Unit\**.

All *Principles\**, *Criteria\** and *Indicators\**, as well as the Glossary contained in this document, are considered *normative\** requirements. Terms for which a definition is provided in the Glossary are *italicized* and are marked with an *asterisk (\*)*.

Throughout this Standard, Intent Boxes appear under some *Criteria\** and *Indicators\**. An Intent Box is meant to provide guidance and context for users, and is not considered *normative\**. Annexes included in the Standard may or may not be *normative\**, depending on the compulsory language by which the Annex is referenced within the *Indicator\** and/or within the Annex itself.

The compulsory nature of instructions found in the *Principles\**, *Criteria\** and *Indicators\** is defined as follows:

- "Shall" indicates instructions that are to be strictly followed.

- “Should” indicates that among several possibilities, one is recommended as particularly suitable, without mentioning or excluding others.
- “May” indicates a course of action permissible within the limits of the Standard.
- “Can” is used for statements of possibility and capability, whether material, physical or causal.
- “Includes” implies that all elements in the list must be addressed.

While the *objectives\**, thresholds or requirements for conformance are outlined within each *Indicator\**, the specific collection of documentation and other evidence to demonstrate conformance is up to *The Organization\**.

## II. Scope and Application of the Standard

FSC forest management certification is designed to provide a credible guarantee that all *Forest Management Units\** (FMUs) included in the scope of the certificate conform with the requirements of the Forest Stewardship Standard specified on the certificate. FSC certification therefore applies to the FMU and all activities related to forest management that occurs within its boundaries.

*The Organization\** is the entity holding or applying for certification that has control and authority over the management of the *Forest Management Unit\**. FSC certification does not apply solely to *The Organization's\** activities, but to all activities within the FMU. *The Organization\** may be the forest owner, forest manager, or both. It is the responsibility of *The Organization\** to demonstrate that the Standard's requirements have been met within the FMU. In several instances, *The Organization\** may rely on the efforts of other parties who play a role in meeting certain requirements (e.g. government entities, *Indigenous Peoples\** and *stakeholders\**). However, where gaps in performance exist, it is the responsibility of *The Organization\** to address these gaps, within their *sphere of influence\**.

In cases where discrete portions of the *forest\** are beyond the management control of *The Organization\**, *The Organization\** may excise these areas from the scope of the certificate. Refer to FSC policies and procedures regarding excision (FSC-POL-20-003).

### Scale, Intensity and Risk\*

FSC recognizes that there exists a continuum of *risk\** from *forest management activities\** depending on the *scale\**, *intensity\** and context of those activities. This Standard is designed to be applied to all size and types of *forests\** in Canada except for those identified as:

- **Small-scale forests\***: *Forests\** that are less than or equal to 1000 ha in size.
- **Low intensity forests\***: *Forests\** with a harvesting rate of less than 20% of the mean annual growth in timber, and either an annual harvest or an annual average harvest of less than 5,000 m<sup>3</sup> (averaged over the 5-year certificate lifetime).
- **Community Forests\***: Any forestry operation managed by a local government, community group, First Nation or community-held corporation for the benefit of the entire community, in which profits are cycled back into the community, and has a total area less than or equal to 80,000 ha in size.

For these *forests\**, a separate *scale, intensity and risk\** (SIR) Standard for Canada is under development to provide the specific requirements that apply in these cases.

However, this Standard does include requirements that take operational *scale, intensity and risk\** of impacts into account. These considerations are embedded within specific *Indicators\** and Intent Boxes throughout the Standard.

## **Interpretation and Use of the Standard**

Forest managers, *Indigenous Peoples\**, *local communities\** and other *stakeholders\** are working in a dynamic system where the social, political, economic and environmental context can change. This can bring a level of uncertainty in how forest managers adapt practices and how certification bodies evaluate Standard requirements.

In a balance between clarity and brevity, the *Indicators\** are written so that their intent is clear enough to avoid misinterpretation by certification bodies and *The Organization\** working towards certification. In many instances, Intent Boxes are included for individual *Indicators\** to provide guidance on the appropriate interpretation of that *Indicator's\** requirements. However, in creating one national Standard that applies over a wide geographic, social and ecological range, there may be cases where local or regional considerations have not been fully accounted for in the Standard, or where circumstances unique to *The Organization's\** context are specifically relevant.

Varying degrees of technical direction is provided in the *Indicators\**, and all efforts should be taken to meet the technical requirements. However, in addressing the requirements of *Indicators\**, *The Organization\** and certification body must keep in mind that technical requirements are in place to achieve the overall intent of *Criteria\** and *Indicators\**. While it may be tempting to analyze individual words and phrases, an overly bureaucratic or legalistic approach to implementing *Indicator\** requirements may in some cases lead to actions not entirely consistent with achieving the intent. Application and evaluation of the Standard will require judicious and logical interpretation of the requirements by auditors and assessors, taking the context of specific *forests\**, ecological regions and social environments into account.

### **A Precautionary Approach\***

FSC recognizes that there are circumstances where *The Organization\** is required to act with incomplete knowledge of cause and effect relationships. In such cases, the Standard advocates the use of a *precautionary approach\**, whereby *The Organization\** avoid actions that may lead to irreversible damage to the environment or a *threat\** to human welfare, and instead consider alternative management strategies. By placing primacy on prudence and caution in dealing with uncertainty, management actions should only proceed when *The Organization\** is confident that severe negative effects will not occur.

### **Sphere of Influence\***

The phrase '*sphere of influence\**' is used throughout the Standard in recognition that there may be circumstances where *The Organization\** does not have direct control or authority over the achievement of an outcome, and a collaborative effort is required. *Sphere of influence\** requirements are commonly related to the actions of external parties, and/or landscape-scale issues.

The expectation for working within *The Organization's\** *sphere of influence\** is that *The Organization\** demonstrates meaningful and sincere attempts, often over a sustained period, to work in a professional manner with colleagues and associates outside of *The Organization\** to achieve the intent of the *Indicator\**.

These expectations align with FSC's goals to address increasingly complex challenges through collaboration with certified and non-certified parties to achieve longer term solutions to how people utilize and benefit from the *forest\**.



### III. Canadian Context

#### i. Land Ownership and Tenure\*

The vast majority of Canada's *forest\** land, about 94%, is publicly owned and managed by provincial, territorial and federal governments<sup>1</sup>. These public forest lands are commonly referred to as *Crown land\**, and generally include very large *forest\** tracts, ranging from thousands to millions of hectares.

Only 6% of Canada's *forest\** lands are privately owned<sup>1</sup>. These private forest lands include large *forests\** owned by forest companies, notably in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Ontario, Québec and British Columbia. The remaining private forest lands include small family-owned *forests\** and woodlots<sup>1</sup>.

*Community forests\** are not limited to a particular type of property. They can be considered public or private land, depending on the particular *tenure\** arrangement<sup>3</sup>. However, the two common elements of *community forests\** are that control and management decisions are made by the community, for the benefit of the entire community<sup>3</sup>. Examples of *community forests\** include municipal forests, county forests, demonstration forests, and Conservation Authority lands.

Rights to harvest timber on *Crown land\** is granted by provincial and territorial governments. These *tenure\** arrangements include the responsibilities and provisions tied to the right to harvest.

#### Overlapping Tenure\*

*Crown land\** is a shared space which aims to meet the interests and activities of various parties. Often on *Crown land\**, *tenure\** rights granted to an organization are not exclusive, but rather, are shared with other parties also operating on the land. These can be other forestry operations with rights to harvest a component of the forest resource, or non-forestry operations who have rights to alter *forests\** while extracting or managing other resources (e.g. mining, oil and gas, and hydroelectric operations).

Where there is overlap by *tenure\** holders in the forest sector, forest planning is often coordinated among all those who share *tenure\**. Most often, a primary forest *tenure\** holder is responsible for organizing and developing the overall forest *management plan\** that all overlapping forest *tenure\** holders must follow. In these cases, forest certification of the *Management Unit\** is often permissible, assuming *The Organization\** has sufficient influence and control over the forest *management plan\** and its implementation throughout the *Management Unit\**.

However, non-forest *tenure\** holders (e.g. mining, or oil and gas operations) are not bound by a forest *management plan\**. This creates challenges because *The Organization\** may not have the authority or leverage to constrain the activities of non-forest *tenure\** holders. In essence, *The Organization\** may lack sufficient control of the activities occurring on the *Management Unit\** to be certifiable.

The approach for handling *overlapping tenure holders\** adopted by this Standard follows these basic tenets established by international FSC policies and directives:

- FSC certification applies to the *forest\**, not *The Organization\**;

- The cumulative impacts of all activities on the *forest\** are to be considered during certification;
- *The Organization\** must demonstrate sufficient management control over activities occurring in the *forest\**;
- Where forest *use rights\** are shared with other *tenure\** holders, *The Organization\** must be able to demonstrate that sharing these rights does not preclude meeting the FSC *Principles\** and *Criteria\** in the *forest\**.

While it is not mandated that all *overlapping tenure holders\** participate in the FSC certification process and/or meet the same FSC requirements as *The Organization\**, their activities must not negate the impact of *The Organization's\** ability to demonstrate that the *forest\** and activities within it meet the conditions of this Standard. Overlapping forest *tenure\** holders who chose not to participate in the certification process may not make claims regarding the FSC-certified status of the wood harvested from the *forest\**.

## ii. Regulatory Context

The federal and provincial/territorial governments have specific roles in the management of public forest lands. The federal government is responsible for issues related to the national economy, trade, international relations, federal lands and national parks, and has constitutional, treaty and *legal\** responsibilities related to *Indigenous Peoples\**. The provincial and territorial governments have legislative authority over the *conservation\** and management of the forest resources on *Crown lands\*2*, and are responsible for developing and enforcing forest-related laws, regulations and policies. Annex A of this Standard refers to documents outlining the minimum laws and regulations related to forest activities that apply federally and those that apply at the provincial and territorial levels.

Some provinces have laws and norms for forest management practices on private lands. However, in most cases, private land forestry is governed by municipal regulations and supported by provincial guidelines or voluntary programs<sup>4</sup>. Landowners address illegal activities on private land through Canadian laws governing property rights<sup>4</sup>.

### FSC Requirements vs. *Legal\** and Regulatory Processes

*The Organization\** is required to comply with all applicable forest laws and regulations. Efforts have been made to avoid known circumstances where the Standard's requirements are not consistent with *legal\** and regulatory requirements. Where a conflict is identified between a requirement of this Standard and an *applicable law\** or regulation, *The Organization\** is not expected to violate the *legal\** requirement, and must promptly notify FSC Canada of the conflict so that FSC may take steps to evaluate the related circumstances.

Alternatively, there may be circumstances where the Standard's requirements go beyond *legal\** and regulatory requirements. Forest certification, as a voluntary system, expects *The Organization\** to complement or even exceed *legal\** and regulatory requirements to achieve the Standard's requirements and remain consistent with FSC's values and mission.

## iii. Indigenous Context

In Canada, the term most commonly used to represent the diversity of *Indigenous Peoples\** is "Aboriginal peoples", as per the *Constitution Act, 1982*. For FSC, *Indigenous Peoples\** includes many diverse First Nations, Inuit and Métis peoples, each whom possess unique histories, languages, cultural practices and spiritual beliefs.

Most First Nations and Inuit peoples, as well as their representative institutions, are recognized by both federal and provincial levels of government. Databases related to their governance, reserve land-base and traditional territories are *publicly available*\*. The same cannot be said for Métis, as the *legal*\* framework to recognize Métis status is in development.

### **Existing Aboriginal and Treaty Rights**

Aboriginal rights are *collective rights*\* which flow from Aboriginal peoples (i.e. *Indigenous Peoples*\*) continued use and occupation of certain areas<sup>5</sup>. They are inherent rights that have been practiced and enjoyed since before European settlement, for example, the right to hunt, fish and trap, self-government and/or a right to the land itself, i.e. Aboriginal title to land<sup>5</sup>. Treaty rights are Aboriginal rights set out in a treaty.

Section 35 of *Canada's Constitution Act, 1982*, provides constitutional protection to existing Aboriginal and treaty rights (First Nation, Inuit and Métis) in Canada. Extensive case law has documented efforts to explicitly define what these rights are and how they are to be protected. Progress has been made on defining obligations of governments in relation to consultation and accommodation requirements, but it is difficult to definitively list specific existing Aboriginal and treaty rights to an area without first conducting case-by-case assessments.

Section 35 also establishes that the Crown has a duty to consult and accommodate Aboriginal peoples when the Crown contemplates actions or decisions that may affect Aboriginal or treaty rights. This duty arises most often in the context of natural resource extraction, including forestry. This fiduciary duty cannot be delegated to third parties, including forest companies. However, the Crown may delegate certain aspects of consultation to a proponent (e.g. collection of information regarding a proposal, impact of a proposed project on potential or established Aboriginal or treaty rights, etc.) when it is in the best interest of all parties to do so. However, it remains the *legal*\* responsibility of the Crown to retain oversight of this delegated authority.

Despite this tripartite relationship, there exists a space in which third parties engage and collaborate with *Indigenous Peoples*\* to ensure Aboriginal and treaty rights are recognized and *upheld*\*. This Standard provides room for this engagement mainly through Principle 3, but through other *Indicators*\* as well. FSC recognizes that unresolved issues, such as how Aboriginal title and private ownership will be reconciled where they overlap, poses important challenges<sup>6</sup> and will require innovative and flexible approaches as the Canadian *legal*\* framework evolves.

### **Customary Rights\***

In Canada, the term "customary right" is not commonly used in Indigenous rights discourse. It is much more common to come across references to *customary law*\*, traditional law, Natural Law or *legal*\* traditions that are codified in written (e.g. wampum belts or sacred scrolls) and unwritten forms (e.g. songs, dances) and passed on through the generations. More importantly, the values, beliefs, and understanding of law are conveyed through the continuing practices, customs and traditions of the society. These practices, as defined in the Glossary, make up the *customary rights*\* of *Indigenous Peoples*\*. For more information on *customary rights*\*, refer to the FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance document.

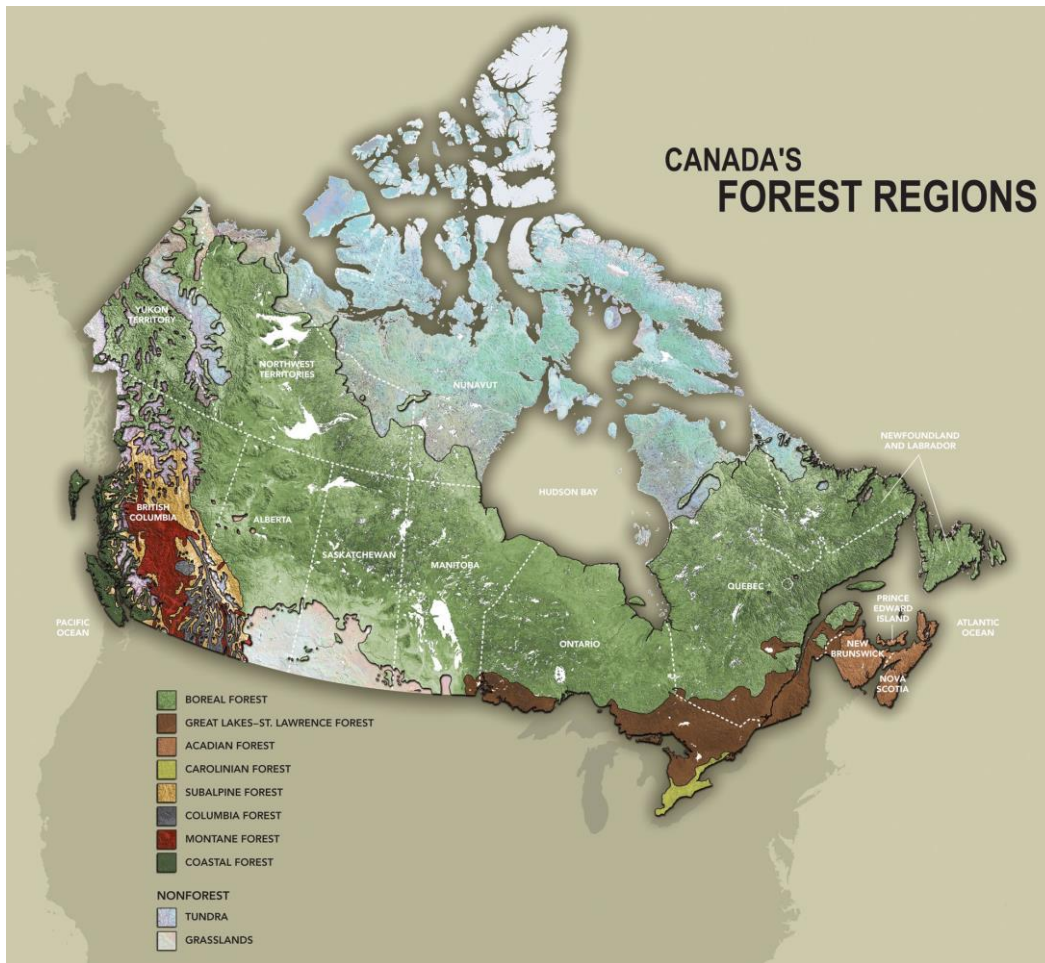
### **Free, Prior and Informed Consent\***

A core concept of international agreements recognizing the rights of *Indigenous Peoples*\* is the right of *Indigenous Peoples*\* to *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*\* (FPIC)\*, and is embedded within FSC's *Principles*\* and *Criteria*\* (version 5). FPIC\* requirements are valid for Canada, and have been adapted in this Standard to recognize the modern-day context of Aboriginal rights discourse. To assist in the understanding of how FPIC\* is to be applied in a Canadian context,

FSC Canada has developed a country-specific guideline for the implementation of FPIC\*. Refer to the *FSC Canada Guidance on Free Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC)*.

#### iv. Ecological Context

While Canada encompasses a wide range of *forest\** types and ecological communities, this Standard is designed to apply to each of Canada's eight forest regions where *forest management activities\** take place.



Source: Natural Resources Canada, Government of Canada. Accessed 2017.  
<http://www.nrcan.gc.ca/forests/measuring-reporting/classification/13179>

#### v. Social Context

Canada's *forests\** are an important source of culture, recreation and economic opportunities for the people living in and around *forests\**. Direct economic dependence on the *forest\** is most heavily realized in northern and remote communities, where in many cases the forest industry is a significant employer. Harmonizing socio-economic needs with the other societal values of the *forest\** requires balancing the interests of local and affected indigenous and non-indigenous communities with other *stakeholders\** and interested parties. FSC attempts to take an inclusive approach to the input of *stakeholders\** and interested parties in forest management and the Standard identifies specific opportunities for their involvement.

## **Disputes\* Between Parties**

Invariably there are cases where people disagree on *management objectives\**. This Standard includes various *dispute\** resolution pathways, depending on the nature of the *dispute\**. However, all *dispute\** resolution pathways address the same general framework:

- identification of *complaints\**;
- escalation to *dispute\**;
- development and implementation of a dispute resolution process; and
- maintaining records of process and outcome.

Annex E describes the dispute resolution process and its application in greater detail.

## **IV. Supporting Documentation to the Standard**

While this Standard forms the backbone of the *normative\** requirements of the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada, additional *normative\** and *non-normative\** documentation exists (both national and international), which is meant to provide direction and guidance regarding the implementation of the Standard. Refer to the Reference List (at the end of the Standard) for a list of the relevant FSC Standards, policies, directives and guidance that apply as of the effective date of this Standard. Additional *normative\** and *non-normative\** documents, as well as adaptations or modifications of this Standard may become available over time.

## **V. Going Forward**

FSC Canada aims to foster stability, clarity and support to certificate holders, certification bodies, *Indigenous Peoples\** and *stakeholders\**. There are areas of work that remain outstanding, including developing requirements and guidance for smallholders and *community forests\** as well as *Intact Forest Landscapes\** and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes. FSC Canada is committed to carefully plan, communicate and deliver on outstanding work, and how changes or new material will be incorporated into the Standard.

FSC's *normative\** requirements allow for targeted revisions that can be initiated within the five-year lifecycle of the Standard. Working closely with the Performance & Standards Unit and with Canadian *stakeholders\**, FSC Canada will identify a modification window if modifications are anticipated.

*The Organizations\**, certification bodies, practitioners, *Indigenous Peoples\** and *stakeholders\** may refer to the FSC Canada website or contact FSC Canada to confirm which documents and versions are current and applicable to the implementation of this Standard.

### **References:**

- 1 Natural Resources Canada (2017-11-20) Forest land ownership. <http://www.nrcan.gc.ca/forests/canada/ownership/17495> (accessed April 18, 2019).
- 2 Canadian Council of Forest Ministers (2017) Sustainable Forest Management in Canada. Overview - Canada's Forests. <https://www.sfmcanada.org/en/canada-s-forests> (accessed April 18, 2019).
- 3 Teitelbaum, S., Beckley, T., and Nadeau, S. (2006) A national portrait of community forestry on public land in Canada. *The Forestry Chronicle* 82(3): 416-428. (Also available at <http://pubs.cif-ifc.org/doi/pdf/10.5558/tfc82416-3>, (accessed April 18, 2019).
- 4 Natural Resources Canada (2017-07-26) Canada's forest laws. <http://www.nrcan.gc.ca/forests/canada/laws/17497> (accessed April 18, 2019).

**5** University of British Columbia First Nations Studies Program. 2009. Indigenous Foundations: Aboriginal Rights. [https://indigenousfoundations.arts.ubc.ca/aboriginal\\_rights/](https://indigenousfoundations.arts.ubc.ca/aboriginal_rights/) (accessed April 18, 2019).

**6** Borrows, J. (2015) Aboriginal title and private property. *The Supreme Court Law Review: Osgoode's Annual Constitutional Cases Conference* 71: 90-134.

## PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS

**The Organization\* shall comply with all applicable laws\*, regulations and nationally-ratified\* international treaties, conventions and agreements. (P1 V4)**

- 1.1 The Organization\* shall be a legally defined entity with clear, documented and unchallenged legal registration\*, with written authorization from the legally competent\* authority for specific activities. (New)**

### INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A (under section 1. *Legal rights to harvest*) for a list of federal and provincial laws and regulations related to this *Criterion\**.

- 1.1.1 *Legal registration\** to carry out all activities within the scope of the certificate granted by a *legally competent\** authority is documented.
- 1.2 The Organization\* shall demonstrate that the legal status\* of the Management Unit\*, including tenure\* and use rights\*, and its boundaries, are clearly defined. (C2.1 P&C V4)**

### INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A (under section 1. *Legal rights to harvest*) for a list of federal and provincial laws and regulations related to this *Criterion\**.

- 1.2.1 *Legal\* tenure\** to manage and use resources within the scope of the certificate granted by a *legally competent\** authority is documented.
- 1.2.2 The boundaries of all *Management Units\** within the scope of the certificate are clearly marked or documented and shown on maps.
- 1.3 The Organization\* shall have legal\* rights to operate in the Management Unit\*, which fit the legal status\* of The Organization\* and of the Management Unit\*, and shall comply with the associated legal\* obligations in applicable national and local laws\* and regulations and administrative requirements. The legal\* rights shall provide for harvest of products and/or supply of ecosystem services\* from within the Management Unit\*. The Organization\* shall pay the legally prescribed charges associated with such rights and obligations. (C1.1, 1.2, 1.3 V4)**

### INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A for a minimum list of *applicable laws\**, regulations and nationally *ratified\** international treaties, conventions and agreements.

CITES requirements are covered by the Wild Animal and Plant Protection and Regulation of International and Interprovincial Trade Act (WAPPRITA) and other existing national legislation.

- 1.3.1 *Forest management activities\** in the *Management Unit\**, planned and ongoing, are carried out in compliance with:
1. *Applicable laws\** and regulations;
  2. Administrative requirements;
  3. *Legal\** rights; and

#### 4. Customary rights\* of Indigenous Peoples\*.

##### INTENT BOX

In Canada, the term "customary right" is not commonly used in Indigenous rights discourse. It is much more common to use *customary law\**, traditional law, Natural Law or *legal\** traditions that are codified in written (e.g. wampum belts or sacred scrolls) and unwritten forms (e.g. songs, dances) and passed on through the generations. More importantly, though, the values, beliefs, and understanding of law are conveyed through the continuing practices, customs and traditions of the society. These practices make up the *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\**.

Annex A refers to a minimum list of current laws and regulations which represent *legal\** rights. The identification of *customary rights\** that are not recognized under Canadian laws and their consideration is achieved through Principle 3.

- 1.3.2 Payment is made in a *timely manner\** of all applicable legally prescribed charges connected with forest management.

#### 1.4 **The Organization\* shall develop and implement measures, and/or shall engage\* with regulatory agencies, to systematically protect the Management Unit\* from unauthorized or illegal resource use, settlement and other illegal activities. (C1.5 V4)**

##### INTENT BOX

It is not always possible for *The Organization\** to enforce protective measures when *The Organization\** is not the landowner and/or does not have the *legal\** rights of control. In Canada, regulatory bodies have the *legal\** responsibility for controlling illegal activities.

Measures to protect the *Management Unit\** from unauthorized or illegal resource use, settlement and other illegal activities emphasize prevention, rather than act 'after the fact'.

- 1.4.1 Within the scope of *The Organization's\** authority, measures are implemented to identify, prevent and control unauthorized or illegal harvesting, hunting, fishing, trapping, collecting, settlement and other unauthorized activities.
- 1.4.2 Where protection is the *legal\** responsibility of regulatory bodies, a system is implemented to work with these regulatory bodies to identify, report, discourage, control and address unauthorized or illegal activities.
- #### 1.5 **The Organization\* shall comply with the applicable national laws\*, local law\*, ratified\* international conventions and obligatory codes of practice\*, relating to the transportation and trade of forest products within and from the Management Unit\*, and/or up to the point of first sale. (C1.1, 1.3 V4)**
- 1.5.1 Compliance with relevant *national laws\**, *local laws\** and *ratified\** international conventions relating to the transportation and trade of forest products, including CITES species, up to the point of first sale is demonstrated, including through possession of certificates for harvest and trade.

##### INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A for a minimum list of *applicable laws\**, regulations and nationally *ratified\** international treaties, conventions and agreements.



CITES requirements are covered by the Wild Animal and Plant Protection and Regulation of International and Interprovincial Trade Act (WAPPRITA) and other existing national legislation.

**1.6 The Organization\* shall identify, prevent and resolve disputes\* over issues of statutory or customary law\*, which can be settled out of court in a timely manner\*, through engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*. (C2.3 V4)**

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex E for details describing how *disputes\** are addressed throughout the Standard.

- 1.6.1 A system is in place whereby *complaints\** can be made known to *The Organization\** related to *applicable laws\** or *customary law\**.
- 1.6.2 A *publicly available\** dispute resolution process that can be adapted through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** is in place, including mechanisms to address *disputes of substantial magnitude\** that include provisions for ceasing operations.
- 1.6.3 *Complaints\** are responded to in a *timely manner\**. *Complaints\** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes\** and are being addressed via a dispute resolution process.

INTENT BOX

FSC recognizes that *The Organization\** may not have control over statutory or *legal\** matters, or may not be directly involved in a *dispute\** regarding the *Management Unit\**. In these cases, it would be reasonable for *The Organization\** to work within its *sphere of influence\** to encourage parties, where appropriate, to work together to resolve the *dispute\**.

- 1.6.4 An up-to-date record of *complaints\** and *disputes\** is maintained and includes:
1. Steps taken to resolve *complaints\** and *disputes\**;
  2. Outcomes of all *complaints\** and dispute resolution processes; and
  3. Unresolved *disputes\**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.
- 1.6.5 The dispute resolution process as established in Indicator 1.6.2 is implemented, following the provisions for ceasing of operations for *disputes of substantial magnitude\**.
- 1.7 The Organization\* shall publicize a commitment not to offer or receive bribes in money or any other form of corruption, and shall comply with anticorruption legislation where this exists. In the absence of anticorruption legislation, The Organization\* shall implement other anticorruption measures proportionate to the scale\* and intensity\* of management activities\* and the risk\* of corruption. (New)**
- 1.7.1 A policy is implemented that:
1. Includes a commitment not to offer or receive bribes of any description;
  2. Meets or exceeds related legislation; and
  3. Is *publicly available\** at no cost.
- 1.7.2 Bribery, coercion and other acts of corruption do not occur.
- 1.7.3 Corrective measures are implemented if corruption does occur.

**1.8 The Organization\* shall demonstrate a long-term\* commitment to adhere to the FSC Principles\* and Criteria\* in the Management Unit\*, and to related FSC Policies and Standards. A statement of this commitment shall be contained in a publicly available\* document made freely available. (C1.6 V4)**

1.8.1 A publicly available\* written policy, endorsed by an individual with authority to implement the policy, demonstrates a long-term commitment to forest management practices consistent with FSC Principles\* and Criteria\* and related Policies and Standards.

INTENT BOX

The individual with authority is not necessarily the president of a company or the most senior manager or the highest-lever manager. For example, depending on the circumstances,

- an individual may have been delegated authority for the implementation of FSC certification;
- if the policy is integrated in the *management plan\**, the individual may be the person in charge of and fully responsible for the forest *management plan\**.

## PRINCIPLE 2: WORKERS’\* RIGHTS AND EMPLOYMENT CONDITIONS

**The Organization\* shall maintain or enhance the social and economic wellbeing of workers\*. (New)**

- 2.1 The Organization\* shall uphold\* the principles and rights at work as defined in the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work (1998) based on the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions. (C4.3 P&C V4)**

### INTENT BOX

There are no known gaps between the ILO Core Conventions and the Canadian national/provincial regulations so there is low *risk\** for violation. See Annex A for more details.

- 2.1.1 Employment practices and conditions for *workers\** demonstrate conformity with federal and provincial labour laws and with the principles and rights of *workers\** addressed in the ILO Core Labour Conventions.
- 2.1.2 *Workers\** are able to establish or join labour organizations of their own choosing, subject only to the rules of the labour organization concerned.
- 2.1.3 Collective bargaining agreements are implemented where they exist.

- 2.2 The Organization\* shall promote gender equality\* in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of engagement\* and management activities. (New)**

- 2.2.1 Systems are implemented that promote *gender equality\** and prevent gender discrimination in employment practices, training opportunities, awarding of contracts, processes of *engagement\** and *management activities\**.
- 2.2.2 Job opportunities are open to both women and men under the same conditions.
- 2.2.3 With consideration for *worker\** experience, performance, and working conditions, women and men are paid equally using a direct and secure method of payment.
- 2.2.4 Maternity and paternity leave is available for no less than a six-week period after childbirth, and there is no penalty for taking it.
- 2.2.5 Women and men are encouraged and supported to actively participate in all levels of employment and decision-making.

### INTENT BOX

Decision-making activities can vary within a business and at different levels of decision-making. They may include participation in forest management planning meetings, technical or strategic committees, decision-making forums, steering committees, membership on the board of directors, etc.

Support for the active participation in meetings may include scheduling the timing of meetings to accommodate family obligations, for example.

2.2.6 Confidential and effective mechanisms exist for reporting and eliminating cases of sexual harassment and discrimination based on gender, marital status, parenthood or sexual orientation.

**2.3 The Organization\* shall implement health and safety practices to protect workers\* from occupational safety and health hazards. These practices shall, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\*, meet or exceed the recommendations of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work. (C4.2 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A for a list of the main health and safety laws and regulations.

2.3.1 Compliance with relevant occupational health and safety regulations as specified in Annex A is demonstrated.

INTENT BOX

In this Standard, the requirements of the ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work are covered by Canadian legislation. Refer to Annex A, section 3.4 of the tables.

Legislation in Canada is equal to (or sometimes exceeds) this ILO Code of Practice.

2.3.2 A worker\* health & safety program for all workers that meets the requirements of Annex C is developed, implemented and reviewed periodically.

2.3.3 Records are kept on health and safety practices including accident rates, a description of accidents and their causes, and lost time due to accidents.

2.3.4 The average frequency and severity of accidents over time are comparable to, or lower than, national or provincial forest workers\* averages, where those exist. If statistics on forest workers\* averages do not exist, the average frequency and severity of accidents over time remain low or are declining.

**2.4 The Organization\* shall pay wages that meet or exceed minimum forest industry standards or other recognized forest industry wage agreements or living wages\*, where these are higher than the legal\* minimum wages. When none of these exist, The Organization\* shall through engagement\* with workers\* develop mechanisms for determining living wages\*. (New)**

2.4.1 Remuneration, including wages and benefits (such as health and retirement provisions), for workers\* is comparable to or exceeds prevailing regional standards in the industry.

2.4.2 Wages, salaries and contracts are paid on time.

**2.5 The Organization\* shall demonstrate that workers\* have job-specific training and supervision to safely and effectively implement the management plan\* and all management activities\*. (C7.3 P&C V4)**

2.5.1 Workers\* have job-specific training consistent with Annex B to safely and effectively contribute to the implementation of the management plan\* and all management activities\*.

2.5.2 Up-to-date training records are kept for workers\*.

**2.6 The Organization\*, through engagement\* with workers\*, shall have mechanisms for resolving grievances and for providing fair compensation\* to workers\* for loss or damage to property, occupational diseases\*, or occupational injuries\* sustained while working for The Organization\*. (New)**

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex E for details describing how *disputes\** are addressed throughout the Standard.

While this *Criterion\** applies to *worker\* complaints\** and *disputes\** while working on the *Management Unit\**, it is recognized that *The Organization\** has limited capacity in managing and implementing dispute resolution processes where *The Organization\** is not directly involved in the *dispute\** (e.g. *dispute\** between a contractor and subcontractor operating on the *Management Unit\**).

In some cases, *complaints\** or *disputes\** may exist between a *worker\** and their employer where the employer is not *The Organization\**. In these cases, the requirements of the *Criterion\** are still applicable, only the approach for demonstrating conformance may be different. For example, in these cases, it is possible for *The Organization\** to verify that the employer's systems for receiving (2.6.1), managing (2.6.2, 2.6.3) and resolving (2.6.4) *complaints\** and *disputes\** with their *workers\** are in place and being implemented by the employer.

2.6.1 A system is in place whereby *complaints\** from *workers\** can be made known to their employer.

2.6.2 A *publicly available\** dispute resolution process that can be adapted through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** is in place.

2.6.3 *Complaints\** are responded to in a *timely manner\**. *Complaints\** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes\** and are being addressed via a dispute resolution process.

2.6.4 An up-to-date record of *complaints\** and *disputes\** is maintained and includes:

1. Steps taken to resolve *complaints\** and *disputes\**;
2. Outcomes of all *complaints\** and disputes resolution processes, including, where applicable, *fair compensation\** to *workers\** for loss or damage to property, *occupational diseases\**, or *occupational injuries\** sustained while working for *The Organization\**; and
3. Unresolved *disputes\**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.

2.6.5 *Workers\** are covered by safety insurance, in accordance with provincial laws and regulations.

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex A (under section 3.4 *Health and Safety*) for a list of provincial safety insurance laws and regulations.

## PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES’\* RIGHTS

**The Organization\* shall identify and uphold\* Indigenous Peoples’\* legal\* and customary rights\* of ownership, use and management of land, territories\* and resources affected by management activities\* . (P3 P&C V4)**

### INTENT BOX

*Indigenous Peoples’\* rights (i.e. Aboriginal and treaty rights) as per Section 35 (1) of the Constitution Act, 1982) are considered collective rights\* in that the rights belong to a group and not to an individual. As per the Constitution Act, 1982, “Aboriginal peoples” include First Nations, Métis and Inuit peoples.*

In addition to these *collective rights\**, the UN Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) and ILO 169 include the protection of basic human rights (i.e. individual rights) of *Indigenous Peoples\**. Individual rights, held by *affected stakeholders\** in this Standard who are also members of an Indigenous community, are addressed in Principle 1 (Criterion 1.6) and Principle 7 (Criterion 7.6), and are not subject to the requirements of *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\* (FPIC\*)* and other national and international human rights instruments (e.g. Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms).

The right to *FPIC\** is a *collective right\** held by *Indigenous Peoples\** and recognized in international law. While FSC Canada has provided guidance on developing processes to *uphold\** this right, it is preferable that *The Organization\** remains open to discussing the definition, scope and nature of such a process with the rights holders.

The principle of *good faith\** and the acceptance of a shared responsibility for meaningful consultation and accommodation is fundamental to the implementation of a *FPIC\** process. To ensure there is broad support for the implementation of a *FPIC\** process, initial and on-going *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\** may also include governments and other *stakeholders\** with whom the affected *Indigenous Peoples\** have a fiduciary relationship.

The intent of Principle 3 is to ensure that all *management activities\**, including the building of relationships between *The Organization\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**, are conducted for the benefit of the entire community. Economic and social benefits gained by a private enterprise from forest management opportunities offered by *The Organization\** are addressed in Principle 5. In circumstances where *Indigenous Peoples\** express concern or an interest in *management activities\** not directly related to *legal\** or *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\**, *The Organization\** may address them through the requirements of Principle 4 – Community Relations.

**Customary rights\*:** This term is defined in the Glossary. Canadian law has recognized certain customary practices and laws that may be unique to specific *Indigenous Peoples\** or a shared custom across many groups. In the context of FSC certification, these practices constitute *customary rights\**. Governments have recognized traditional forms of land governance through legally *binding agreements\** such as government-to-government consultation agreements and agreements related to modern day treaty negotiation. Such agreements may provide examples of *customary rights\** pertinent to the forestry context (refer to the Preamble for additional context).

**The right to Free, Prior and Informed Consent\*:** The right to *FPIC\** is a key principle of international human rights law. It is intended to protect the *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** and prevent further destruction and alienation from lands, *territories\** and resources upon which their cultures, livelihoods and lives depend. In the context of the FSC Standard, the right to *FPIC\** is attributed to identified affected rights holders as per

Indicator 3.1.4. The rights that may be addressed through a *FPIC*\* process in 3.2.4 are those rights that may be impacted by *management activities*\* as identified in Indicator 3.1.4.

**Disputes\***: This term is defined in the Glossary. *Complaints*\* and *disputes*\* regarding the legality of the forestry operation (e.g. forest *tenure*\* allocation or management regulations) are addressed in Criterion 1.6. Dispute resolution processes that are specific to negotiated agreements between *The Organization*\* and affected *Indigenous Peoples*\*, but may not be *publicly available*\*, are addressed in Indicators 3.2.4 and 3.3.3. If *complaints*\* or *disputes*\* registered by affected *Indigenous Peoples*\*, related to the impact of the forest *management activities*\*, are not addressed in Criterion 1.6 and in Principle 3, they could be addressed in Criterion 4.6.

**Culturally appropriate\* engagement\***: These terms are defined in the Glossary and further explained in Annex F. *The Organization*\* may wish to further clarify what this means in their own context (e.g. private land, small landholders, *community forests*\*). For example, *engagement*\* is not limited to *stakeholders*\* or *Indigenous Peoples*\*, but may also include government officials with responsibilities related to *management activities*\*. The purpose of the *engagement*\* is to ensure all relevant information is collected to fulfil the requirements of management planning and the Standard.

**Private Lands**: Canadian courts and legislation recognize that *legal*\* and *customary rights*\* (specifically *use rights*\*) and private property rights (i.e. right of ownership) may co-exist. This Standard does not abrogate or derogate from the right to property. The *legal rights*\* and *customary rights*\* addressed in Principle 3 are based on the pre-settlement conditions of the region (i.e. prior to the granting of land) and must be identified on a case-by-case basis, preferably through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** and relationship building. The mechanisms (i.e. type of agreements) used to *uphold*\* these rights on private lands may differ from public lands. There is an evolving *legal*\* framework related to Aboriginal and treaty rights and private lands in Canada. FSC Canada will monitor and adapt the *FPIC Guidance* or provide *normative*\* direction when/if necessary.

**FPIC Guidance**: For more information on the nature and scope of *Indigenous Peoples*\* rights, including the right to *Free, Prior and Informed Consent*\*, refer to FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance.

**3.1 *The Organization*\* shall identify the *Indigenous Peoples*\* that exist within the *Management Unit*\* or those that are affected by *management activities*\*. *The Organization*\* shall then, through *engagement*\* with these *Indigenous Peoples*\*, identify their rights of *tenure*\*, their rights of access to and use of forest resources and ecosystem services\*, their *customary rights*\* and *legal*\* rights and obligations, that apply within the *Management Unit*\*. *The Organization*\* shall also identify areas where these rights are contested. (New)**

3.1.1 *Indigenous Peoples*\* that may be affected by *management activities*\* are identified.

3.1.2 Through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with the *Indigenous Peoples*\* identified in 3.1.1, the following is documented and/or mapped using *best available information*\*:

1. Their *legal*\* and/or *customary rights*\* of *tenure*\*;
2. Their *legal*\* and/or *customary*\* access to, and *use rights*\*, of the forest resources and ecosystem services\*;
3. Their other *legal*\* and/or *customary rights*\* and responsibilities that may be affected by *management activities*\*;

4. The evidence supporting these rights and responsibilities; and
  5. Areas where rights are contested between *Indigenous Peoples\**, governments and/or others.
- 3.1.3 When there is disagreement about the *legal\** and/or *customary rights\** affected by *management activities\**, *The Organization\** attempts, through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\**, to reach agreement on an interim scope of rights to be recognized and *upheld\**. This process is conducted in *good faith\**, documented and available at the time of audit.

INTENT BOX
<p>The intent of Indicator 3.1.3 is to support the development and maintenance of meaningful relationships that support long-term and <i>culturally appropriate* engagement*</i> that is fostered through dialogue. In the beginning, it may be helpful for <i>The Organization*</i> to make persistent and sincere attempts to meet with <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> identified in Indicator 3.1.1 and discuss the nature and scope of the <i>legal*</i> and <i>customary rights*</i> that may be impacted by <i>management activities*</i>.</p> <p><b>For private Land:</b> In situations where <i>legal*</i> and/or <i>customary rights*</i> are asserted by <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> (identified in Indicator 3.1.1) without evidence, and private land owners determine through impact assessment that the negative impacts of the assertion are too high, the right to private property may be weighed against the rights of <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i>.</p>

- 3.1.4 *Legal\** and/or *customary rights\** that may be impacted by *management activities\** on specific areas of the *Management Unit\** are identified, and a summary of the means by which these rights, and contested rights, may be addressed is provided by *The Organization\**.

**3.2 *The Organization\* shall recognize and uphold\* the legal\* and customary rights\* of Indigenous Peoples\* to maintain control over management activities\* within or related to the Management Unit\* to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources and lands and territories\*. Delegation by Indigenous Peoples\* of control over management activities\* to third parties requires Free, Prior and Informed Consent\*. (C3.1 and 3.2 P&C V4)***

- 3.2.1 Prior to *management activities\** and through a *mutually agreed\* upon culturally appropriate\* engagement\* process*, it is determined when, where and how *Indigenous Peoples\** can participate in management planning, both strategic and/or operational, to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, *lands and territories\**.
- 3.2.2 *Culturally appropriate\* support for Indigenous Peoples\* participation in management planning is provided.*
- 3.2.3 The *legal\** and/or *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** affected by *management activities\** identified in Indicator 3.1.4 are recognized and *upheld\**.
- 3.2.4 Where evidence exists that *legal\** and/or *customary rights\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** related to *management activities\** have been violated, the situation is corrected, if necessary, through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** and/or through the dispute resolution process as required in Criterion 1.6.



3.2.5 *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** is obtained prior to *management activities\** that affect the rights identified in Indicator 3.1.4 through a process that:

1. Engages the *Indigenous Peoples\** in the assessment of the economic, social and *environmental values\** of the forest management resource;
2. Documents an approach to identifying the goals and aspirations of affected rights holders related to *management activities\**;
3. Includes a *mutually agreed\** upon dispute resolution process;
4. Supports dialogue regarding the rights and responsibilities of *Indigenous Peoples\** to the resource;
5. Informs affected *Indigenous Peoples\** of their right to withhold consent or modify consent to the proposed *management activities\** to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, *lands and territories\**; and
6. Supports decision-making by affected *Indigenous Peoples\** that is free of coercion, manipulation or intimidation.

When *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** has not been obtained, *The Organization\** demonstrates *best efforts\** to support a *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** process with affected *Indigenous Peoples\** that is advancing in *good faith\** with the intent of reaching an agreement based on *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\**.

#### INTENT BOX

The goal and *objective\** of a *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** process between *The Organization\** and affected *Indigenous Peoples\** is to obtain *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** for *management activities\** proposed within the *Management Unit\** that may adversely impact their *legal\* and customary rights\**, as identified in Indicator 3.1.4, to resources, *lands and territories\**. The strategies and actions required by all parties to these processes will vary. The trust and confidence required to build and maintain a relationship that supports such a decision may require significant effort over a long period of time on the part of *The Organization\** and affected *Indigenous Peoples\**.

**The right to Free, Prior and Informed Consent\*:** Refer to the Intent Box for Principle 3 above.

It is possible that while a process is in place to obtain *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\**, a formal agreement may not be reached at the time of audit. It is also possible that, for reasons outside the *sphere of influence\** of *The Organization\**, there may be a lack of response or cooperation from affected *Indigenous Peoples\**, and therefore no documented support for either the process or *management activities\**.

However, the intent to obtain *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** can be demonstrated through other means. Some examples include through policy and procedures, work plans, and records of communication (or attempted communication) with *Indigenous Peoples\** when an agreed-upon *FPIC\** process is not in place. Communication and support from government agencies with fiduciary and *legal\** obligations to *Indigenous Peoples\** may also be helpful to demonstrating *best efforts\**, particularly when efforts by *The Organization\** to *engage\* Indigenous Peoples\** have been unsuccessful.

**Scale of rights:** While Indicator 3.1.4 and Criterion 3.5 call for the identification and protection of *Indigenous Peoples\** rights at an operational and site-specific level, the application of rights, including cumulative impacts, may also apply across the *Management Unit\**. In this case, rights would be addressed at the strategic planning level, as described in 3.2.1.

**Good faith\*:** *Good faith\** is defined in the Glossary. It is a term used in ILO Conventions and recognized as an auditable element. The principle of *good faith\** implies that the parties

make every effort to reach an agreement, conduct genuine and constructive negotiations, avoid delays in negotiations, respect concluded agreements, and give sufficient time to discuss and settle *disputes\**. Additional information is provided in the FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance document.

Recognizing that *Indigenous Peoples\** may not want to grant *Free Prior and Informed Consent\** and/or delegate control for their own reasons, *Indigenous Peoples\** may choose to offer their support for *management activities\** in a different way of their choosing (refer to Indicators 3.3.1 and 3.3.2).

**Private Land:** There is an expectation that the approach to obtaining *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** on private lands will be different. This may include:

- a lengthier process of *engagement\** to reach agreement, especially if rights holders have been excluded from the *forest\** land for a long time;
- *engagement\** with individual rights holders (i.e. *customary rights\**) who claim and express an interest in accessing private property to carrying out their *legal\** and *customary rights\** and responsibilities (e.g. collection of birch bark, medicinal plants, hunting or social gathering); and
- the development of a shared understanding of best practices to mutually recognize and respect each party's rights to property (e.g. securing permission to enter private property through agreement.)

**3.3 In the event of delegation of control over *management activities\**, a *binding agreement\** between *The Organization\** and the *Indigenous Peoples\** shall be concluded through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\**. The agreement shall define its duration, provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination, economic conditions and other terms and conditions. The agreement shall make provision for *monitoring by Indigenous Peoples\** of *The Organization's\** compliance with its terms and conditions. (New)**

INTENT BOX

This *Criterion\** builds upon the *FPIC\** process as described in Indicator 3.2.5 through the development, implementation and monitoring of *binding agreements\**. These agreements do not require a delegation of control over *management activities\**. The purpose of agreements is for *The Organization\** to address the impact of *management activities\** on the customs, values, sensitivities and ways of life of *Indigenous Peoples\**.

- 3.3.1 A *binding agreement\** contains the terms and conditions on which *Free Prior and Informed Consent\** is reached, based on *culturally appropriate\* engagement\**.
- 3.3.2 Records of *binding agreements\** are maintained.
- 3.3.3 The *binding agreement\** defines the duration, provisions for renegotiation, renewal, termination, economic conditions, provisions for monitoring and dispute resolution.
- 3.4 *The Organization\** shall recognize and uphold\* the rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples\** as defined in the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (2007) and ILO Convention 169 (1989). (C3.2 P&C V4, revised to comply with FSC-POL-30-401, ILO 169 and UNDRIP)**

INTENT BOX

The requirement of *culturally appropriate engagement\** throughout the Standard is intended to facilitate a relationship building process based on dialogue, knowledge sharing and

mutual respect. Through continuous *engagement\**, *The Organization\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** may discuss and eventually *mutually agree\** on the role of FSC certification in meeting Canada's commitment to UNDRIP as well as the unratified ILO Convention No.169.

*Indigenous Peoples\** may raise concerns related to UNDRIP and ILO 169. The ongoing *engagement\** process set out in this Standard (Principle 1 and 3) provides an opportunity for *The Organization\** to determine what is actionable (within their *sphere of influence\**) through provisions elsewhere in Principle 3, or other parts of the Standard. The intent of *culturally appropriate engagement\** is to prevent violations of *Indigenous Peoples\** rights.

Additional supporting information for the implementation of this *Criterion\** is available in the FSC Canada FPIC Guidance document.

- 3.4.1 There is no evidence that the rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples\** as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 are violated by *The Organization\**.
- 3.4.2 Where evidence that rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples\** as defined in UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 have been violated by *The Organization\**, *The Organization\** documents the situation, including steps to a just and fair redress for the violation of the rights, customs and culture of *Indigenous Peoples\**, in keeping with the dispute resolution process in Indicator 3.2.5.
- 3.5 *The Organization\**, through *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\**, shall identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance and for which these *Indigenous Peoples\** hold *legal\** or *customary rights\**. These sites shall be recognized by *The Organization\** and their management, and/or *protection\** shall be agreed through *engagement\** with these *Indigenous Peoples\**. (C3.3 P&C V4, revised to POL 30-401)**
- 3.5.1 Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for which *Indigenous Peoples\** hold *legal\** or *customary rights\** are identified through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\**.
- 3.5.2 Agreed upon measures to protect such sites are documented and implemented through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\**. When *Indigenous Peoples\** determine that physical identification of sites in documentation or on maps would threaten the value or *protection\** of the sites, other means are used.
- 3.5.3 Wherever sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance are newly observed or discovered, *management activities\** in the vicinity cease immediately until protective measures have been agreed to with the *Indigenous Peoples\**, and as directed by *local\** and *national laws\**.
- 3.6 *The Organization\** shall *uphold\** the right of *Indigenous Peoples\** to protect and utilize their *traditional knowledge\** and shall compensate *local communities\** for the utilization of such knowledge and their *intellectual property\**. A *binding agreement\** as per Criterion 3.3 shall be concluded between *The Organization\** and the *Indigenous Peoples\** for such utilization through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** before utilization takes place, and shall be consistent with the protection of *intellectual property\** rights. (C3.4 P&C V4)**

#### INTENT BOX

The intent of this *Criterion\** is to prevent the commercialization of *traditional knowledge\** without compensation by *The Organization\** for the purposes of creating a product and/or service. It is not meant to prevent the sharing of information by *Indigenous Peoples\** for the purposes of *management plan\** development.

- 3.6.1 *Traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\** is protected and is only used when the acknowledged owners of that *traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\** have provided their *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** formalized through a *binding agreement\**.
- 3.6.2 *Indigenous Peoples\** are compensated according to the *binding agreement\** reached through *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** for the use of *traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\** for commercial purposes.

## PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS

**The Organization\* shall contribute to maintaining or enhancing the social and economic well-being of local communities\*. (P4 P&C V4)**

### INTENT BOX

#### **Local Community\* vs. Indigenous Peoples\*:**

In this Standard, a *local community\** refers to a non-indigenous group of people. A *local community\** and an Indigenous community (referred to in this Standard as *Indigenous Peoples\**) may occupy overlapping areas within a *Management Unit\**.

In general, Principle 4 addresses requirements regarding *local communities\** unless the *Indicator\** specifies *Indigenous Peoples\**. The inclusion of *Indigenous Peoples\** in Criteria 4.3, 4.4, 4.5 and 4.6 is based on the decision by FSC Canada to separate rights-based negotiations and processes from business related negotiations and agreements. Furthermore, the topics covered by these *Criteria\** are not implicitly included within the agreement requirements in Principle 3. However, it should be noted that *Indigenous Peoples\** and *The Organization\** may choose to address these topics such as opportunities for employment, training, economic development or impact mitigation through agreements and processes established in Principle 3.

#### **Local Community\* vs. Affected Stakeholders\*:**

*Local communities\** are included in the definition of *affected stakeholder\** therefore most requirements applicable to *affected stakeholders\** will apply to *local communities\**. However, additional consideration for *local communities\** is identified throughout this *Principle\**, such as those related to employment and training opportunities, social and economic development, avoidance and mitigation of negative impacts, as well as a specific dispute resolution process.

#### **Rights and other Concerns Related to Stakeholders\* & Individuals:**

*Stakeholders\** (if not a *local community\**) and individual rights and concerns are not addressed in Principle 4. Instead, all *legal\** or *customary rights\** pertaining to *affected stakeholders\** or individuals are addressed in Principle 1. Other *affected stakeholders\**, *interested stakeholders\** and individuals' concerns are addressed in Criterion 7.6.

#### **Applicability of Local Community\* Rights and Traditional Knowledge\* in the Standard:**

In the Canadian context of forest management and related activities, *local communities\** have *legal\** rights related to general human rights and access to public land. There are few known instances where *local communities\** have *legal\* collective rights\** related to *management activities\** on public land. However, as a group who inhabit a specific area, it is necessary to maintain the resources they utilize as well as their quality of life.

In Canada, *customary rights\** (or *customary laws\**) have been identified for:

- 1) communities established before colonization; and
- 2) communities who developed their own customs, practices, traditions and recognizable group identities separate from their First Nation, Inuit and European ancestors (e.g. Métis).

(<https://www.aadnc-aandc.gc.ca/eng/1100100014419/1100100014420>)

No *customary rights\** have been established for non-Indigenous *local communities\**. However, the evolutionary nature of legal frameworks could potentially result in a Canadian *local community\** gaining *customary rights\** status for long-held practices. The intent of the

*Indicators\** related to *customary rights\** in this *Principle\** is to make them applicable only once a *local community\** has established such *customary rights\**.

In addition, according to the FAO and United Nations documents (*UN-REDD Guidelines on FPIC interpretation*), *FPIC\** should apply to *Indigenous Peoples\** and to minority groups who share common characteristics with *Indigenous Peoples\**. *Local communities\** in Canada do not share these characteristics.

Furthermore, no *traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\** have been knowingly identified and recognized for *local communities\**. Criterion 4.8 is applicable when strong evidence is provided by the *local community\** to demonstrate ownership of *traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\**.

**4.1 The Organization\* shall identify the local communities\* that exist within the Management Unit\* and those that are affected by management activities\*. The Organization\* shall then, through engagement\* with these local communities\*, identify their rights of tenure\*, their rights of access to and use of forest resources and ecosystem services\*, their customary rights\* and legal\* rights and obligations, that apply within the Management Unit\*. (New)**

4.1.1 *Local communities\** that may be affected by *forest management activities\** are identified.

4.1.2 Through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with the *local communities\** identified in Indicator 4.1.1, the following are documented and/or mapped:

1. *Legal\** and *customary rights\**;
2. A summary of means by which these rights identified in 4.1.2.1 may be addressed is provided by *The Organization\**;
3. The interests of *local communities\** related to *forest management activities\** in the *Management Unit\**;
4. The benefits, goods and/or services from the *Management Unit\** used by *local communities\**;
5. Areas where there are conflicts affecting or related to *The Organization's\** activities. The conflict may be between *local communities\**, governments, *Indigenous Peoples\** and/or others.

**INTENT BOX**

Refer to Annex F for more guidance related to *culturally appropriate\* engagement\**.

**4.2 The Organization\* shall recognize and uphold\* the legal\* and customary rights\* of local communities\* to maintain control over management activities\* within or related to the Management Unit\* to the extent necessary to protect their rights, resources, lands and territories\*. Delegation by local communities\* of control over management activities\* to third parties requires Free, Prior and Informed Consent\*. (C2.2 P&C V4)**

**INTENT BOX**

This *Criterion\** applies to rights identified in 4.1.2.1. Refer to the Intent Box at the beginning of Principle 4.

4.2.1 Through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\**, *local communities\** are informed of when, where and how they can comment on and request modification to *management activities\** to the extent necessary to protect their rights identified in 4.1.2.1.

- 4.2.2 The *legal\** and customary rights\* of *local communities\** related to *management activities\** are not violated by *The Organization\**.
- 4.2.3 Where evidence exists that *legal\** and *customary rights\** of *local communities\** related to *management activities\** have been violated, the situation is corrected, if necessary, through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** and/or through the dispute resolution process detailed in Criteria 1.6 or 4.6.
- 4.3 *The Organization\** shall provide *reasonable\** opportunities for employment, training and other services to *local communities\**, contractors and suppliers proportionate to *scale\** and *intensity\** of its *management activities\**. (C4.1 P&C V4)**
- 4.3.1 *The Organization\** ensures that *reasonable\** opportunities for employment, training and other services, proportionate to the *scale\** and *intensity\** of the *management activities\** are communicated and provided to affected *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**, local workers\*, local contractors and local suppliers, either directly or through collaboration.

INTENT BOX
These opportunities may be either directly or indirectly linked to <i>The Organization's* management activities*</i> . This differs from Criterion 4.4, which requires that additional activities, not linked to <i>management activities*</i> , need to be implemented and/or supported.

- 4.4 *The Organization\** shall implement additional activities, through *engagement\** with *local communities\**, that contribute to their social and economic development, proportionate to the *scale\**, *intensity\** and socio-economic impact of its *management activities\**. (C4.4 P&C V4)**
- 4.4.1 In proportion to the *scale\** and *intensity\** of *management activities\** affecting the community, opportunities for local social and economic development are identified through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with affected *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** and/or other relevant organizations identified by the *local community\** or the *Indigenous Peoples\**.
- 4.4.2 Projects and other activities that contribute to local social and economic benefits and are relative to the *scale\** of the socio-economic impact of *management activities\** are implemented and/or supported.
- 4.5 *The Organization\**, through *engagement\** with *local communities\**, shall take action to identify, avoid and mitigate significant negative social, environmental and economic impacts of its *management activities\** on affected communities. The action taken shall be proportionate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of those activities and negative impacts. (C4.4 P&C V4)**
- 4.5.1 Through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with affected *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**, significant negative social, environmental and economic impacts of *management activities\** are identified.
- 4.5.2 Through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with affected *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**, measures to avoid and/or mitigate significant negative impacts identified in Indicator 4.5.1 are determined and implemented.

**4.6 The Organization\*, through engagement\* with local communities\*, shall have mechanisms for resolving grievances and providing fair compensation\* to local communities\* and individuals with regard to the impacts of management activities\* of The Organization\*. (C4.5 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex E for details describing how *disputes\** are addressed throughout the Standard.

- 4.6.1 A system is in place whereby *complaints\** can be made known to *The Organization\** related to impact of *forest management activities\** on affected *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**.
- 4.6.2 A *publicly available\** dispute resolution process that can be adapted through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** is in place, including mechanisms to address *disputes of substantial magnitude\** that include provisions for ceasing operations.
- 4.6.3 *Complaints\** are responded to in a *timely manner\**. *Complaints\** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes\** and are being addressed via a dispute resolution process.
- 4.6.4 An up-to-date record of *complaints\** and *disputes\** is maintained, and includes:
1. Steps taken to resolve *complaints\** and *disputes\**;
  2. Outcomes of all *complaints\** and dispute resolution processes, including, where applicable, *fair compensation\**; and
  3. Unresolved *disputes\**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.
- 4.6.5 The dispute resolution process as established in Indicator 4.6.2 is implemented, following the provisions for ceasing of operations for *disputes of substantial magnitude\**.
- 4.7 The Organization\*, through engagement\* with local communities\*, shall identify sites which are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance, and for which these local communities\* hold legal\* or customary rights\*. These sites shall be recognized by The Organization\*, and their management and/or protection\* shall be agreed through engagement\* with these local communities\*. (New)**
- 4.7.1 Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance for which *local communities\** hold *legal\** and/or *customary rights\** are identified through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** and are recognized by *The Organization\**.
- 4.7.2 Measures to protect such sites are agreed, documented and implemented through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with *local communities\**. When *local communities\** determine that physical identification of sites in documentation or on maps would threaten the value or *protection\** of the sites, other means are used.
- 4.7.3 When sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance are newly observed or discovered, *management activities\** in the vicinity will cease immediately until protective measures have been agreed to with the *local communities\**, and as directed by local and *national laws\**.



INTENT BOX

Newly observed or discovered sites of special significance should be recognized as a result of a credible process, such as an archaeological excavation or other similar investigation.

- 4.8** *The Organization\* shall uphold\* the right of local communities\* to protect and utilize their traditional knowledge\* and shall compensate local communities\* for the utilization of such knowledge and their intellectual property\*. A binding agreement\* as per Criterion 3.3 shall be concluded between The Organization\* and the local communities\* for such utilization through Free, Prior and Informed Consent\* before utilization takes place, and shall be consistent with the protection of intellectual property\* rights. (New)*

INTENT BOX

Criterion 4.8 is applicable when strong evidence is provided by the *local community\** to demonstrate ownership of *traditional knowledge\** and *intellectual property\**. Refer to the Intent Box at the beginning of Principle 4.

The use of *Indigenous Peoples'\** *traditional knowledge\** is addressed in Criterion 3.6.

- 4.8.1 *Traditional knowledge\* and intellectual property\* of the local community\* are protected and are only used when the local community\* has agreed through a binding agreement\* and compensation is provided according to the agreement.*

## PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST\*

**The Organization\* shall efficiently manage the range of multiple products and services of the Management Unit\* to maintain or enhance long term economic viability\* and the range of social and environmental benefits.**

- 5.1 The Organization\* shall identify, produce, or enable the production of, diversified benefits and/or products, based on the range of resources and ecosystem services\* existing in the Management Unit\* in order to strengthen and diversify the local economy proportionate to the scale\* and intensity\* of management activities\*. (C5.2 and 5.4 V4)**

### INTENT BOX

*The Organization\** is expected to make *reasonable\** attempts to identify the range of products and benefits available in the *Management Unit\**. *The Organization\** is expected to diversify the production of benefits and services from the *Management Unit\** as much as their *tenure\** rights permit. For commercial operations, a diversification of commercial opportunities is expected to increase adaptability to market fluctuations and thereby increase the likelihood of long-term *economic viability\** of *The Organization\**. In addition, diversification provides the basis for contributing to a diversified and more stable local economy.

This Criterion does not require that products and services are harvested, developed or marketed by *The Organization\** itself. However, it is expected that *The Organization\** provides opportunities to interested local entrepreneurs and individuals to develop, process and market products and services derived from the *Management Unit\**, to retrieve products and services from the *Management Unit\**, or to utilize the benefits and products from the *Management Unit\**, if required.

*The Organization\** is not required to provide opportunities or pursue activities that would prevent it from achieving its own *management objectives\** or conformance with the *Principles\** and *Criteria\**. Examples of how *The Organization\** can provide such opportunities may include permitting local people and enterprises to conduct the following activities:

- Harvesting of *non-timber forest products\**,
- recreational or (eco-) tourism activities within the *Management Unit\**,
- collection of dead wood for local processing.

*The Organization\** may only permit activities if they are within the limit of *The Organization's\** *tenure\** rights. Otherwise, it is reasonable that *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\**, where appropriate.

This *Criterion\** recognizes that the extent of possible diversification depends on the specific situation (e.g. existing range of resources, *ecosystem services\** available and opportunity costs) of the *Management Unit\**.

This *Criterion\** also recognizes that continual diversification is not required. Not all potentially *marketable\** products from a *Management Unit\** are always saleable, or command a consistent price. Furthermore, benefits produced by the *Management Unit\** may not be of direct commercial or economic benefit but they may be of indirect benefit to the local economy.

The development of *ecosystem services\** remains optional in this FSC standard. If *The Organization\** wants to make promotional claims regarding *ecosystem services\**, conformance to FSC International procedure FSC-PRO-30-006 on "Ecosystem Services Procedure: Impact Demonstration and Market Tools" will need to be demonstrated.

- 5.1.1 A range of *ecosystem services\**, non-timber and timber forest resources and products that could strengthen and diversify the local economy are identified.
- 5.1.2 Consistent with *management objectives\** and within the limits of *The Organization's\* tenure\** rights, some of the resources, products and services identified in Indicator 5.1.1 are produced and/or made available for others to produce, as a means to strengthen and diversify the local economy.
- 5.1.3 When *The Organization\** makes FSC promotional claims regarding the provision of *ecosystem services\**, it is in conformance with the procedure FSC-PRO-30-006 on "Ecosystem Services Procedure: Impact Demonstration and Market Tools"

**INTENT BOX**

This *Indicator\** is applicable only if the applicant intends on making *ecosystem service\** claims, otherwise, it is optional.

**5.2 *The Organization\** shall normally harvest products and services from the Management Unit\* at or below a level which can be permanently sustained. (C5.6 V4)**

- 5.2.1 Analysis and calculation of harvest levels for timber forest products are done frequently enough (at least every 10 years) to ensure they remain current with respect to harvest activities, natural disturbances, *management objectives\**, and supporting information, such as inventories.

The analysis and calculation of harvest levels are based upon:

1. A *precautionary approach\** that reflects the quality of information and assumptions used;
2. *Management objectives\** and strategies as set out in the *management plan\**, including those for *restoration\**;
3. Current management practices, performance and success of *silvicultural systems\**;
4. *Best available information\** on growth and yield;
5. Best available and quality inventory data;
6. Volume and area reductions caused by mortality and decay, as well as natural disturbances, such as fire, insects and disease;
7. Adherence to all other requirements in this Standard;
8. Operational constraints;
9. Harvest projections or wood supply calculations that extend to a planning horizon long enough to provide quality results. A rationale for the choice of the planning horizon is provided, but is at least 80 years;
10. Future forest condition *objectives\** as/if identified in the *forest management plan\**; and
11. Available sensitivity analyses of the factors that apply to harvest level calculations, including the effects of climate change when growth and yield projections are available.

**INTENT BOX**

It is acceptable for some issues, such as mortality and decay, not to be incorporated into the analysis and calculation of harvest levels, if these issues are considered through other means, such as during harvest level allocations.

- 5.2.2 Based on the *timber harvesting level\** as analyzed for Indicator 5.2.1, a maximum allowable annual cut for timber is determined, with respect to these conditions:
1. The maximum allowable annual cut does not impair the ability of the *Management Unit\** to continue to provide the products and services, *ecosystem functions\** and *ecosystem services\** of the unit.
  2. Temporary or *long-term\** changes in the yield or standing volumes of any specific forest product arising from *management activities\** are permitted, provided that these fluctuations do not impair the achievement of the *objectives\** described in the *management plan\** through the mid- and *long-term\**.

INTENT BOX
Fluctuations in the yield and in harvest rates can be the consequence of disturbances or of a planned management strategy. It is expected that in situations of major disturbance, fluctuations could be more significant and occur over a longer period.

- 5.2.3 Actual annual timber harvest is recorded and the averaged level of harvest over a defined period (maximum of 10 years) does not exceed the allowable cut determined in Indicator 5.2.2.
- 5.2.4 The harvest of commercial *non-timber forest products\** under control of *The Organization\** does not exceed a level that can be sustained. Sustainable harvest levels for *non-timber forest products\** are based on *best available information\**.
- 5.3 *The Organization\** shall demonstrate that the positive and negative externalities\* of operations are included in the management plan\*. (C5.1 V4)**
- 5.3.1 Management planning takes into account the long-term positive and negative environmental and social impacts of *management activities\**.
- 5.4 *The Organization\** shall use local processing, local services, and local value adding to meet the requirements of *The Organization\** where these are available, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\*. If these are not locally available, *The Organization\** shall make reasonable\* attempts to help establish these services. (C5.2 V4)**

INTENT BOX
The intent of this <i>Criterion*</i> is for <i>The Organization*</i> to promote further socio-economic benefits through economic opportunities beyond direct employment by <i>The Organization*</i> . The desired outcome is that <i>The Organization*</i> stimulates the local economy through the purchase of relevant local services and products, or supports the creation of relevant new local services and supply of relevant local products. In areas where local service providers are already in place, the preference is to support these businesses before hiring other service providers who are not local.

- 5.4.1 Where cost, quality and capacity of non-local and local options are at least equivalent, local goods, services, processing and value-added facilities are used.
- 5.4.2 *Reasonable\** attempts are made to encourage and/or support capacity where local goods, services, processing and value-added facilities are not available.
- 5.5 *The Organization\** shall demonstrate through its planning and expenditures proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\*, its commitment to long-term economic viability\*. (C5.1 V4)**

- 5.5.1 Sufficient expenditures and investments are made to implement the *management plan*\* in order to meet this Standard and to ensure *economic viability*\* of *The Organization*\* over the long-term.

INTENT BOX

If *The Organization*\* is a for-profit business, *economic viability*\* means that *The Organization*\* has the *objective*\* to be profitable over time. The intent of this *Indicator*\* is that *The Organization*\* generates a return on invested capital that is sufficient to ensure stable operations and investment in the business.

## PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL VALUES\* AND IMPACTS

**The Organization\* shall maintain, conserve\* and/or restore\* ecosystem services\* and environmental values\* of the Management Unit\*, and shall avoid, repair or mitigate negative environmental impacts. (P6 P&C V4)**

### NOTE

For a certificate holder previously certified under one of the Canadian regional FSC Standards, some *Indicators\** in Principle 6 of this Standard may not be achievable within the normal one-year schedule required for conformance (as per the effective date of the Standard).

Refer to Annex H for details.

### INTENT BOX

#### **Best Available Information\***

Several *Indicators\** in this *Principle\** require that *best available information\** be used to provide a baseline for *management activities\** or as a basis for analyses in subsequent *Indicators\**. *Organizations\** are expected to implement these requirements in consideration of an *FPIC\** process, as described in Principle 3, that is inclusive of information sharing related to *legal\** and *customary rights\** as well as site, *stand\**, and *landscape values\** of economic, social, and cultural significance to *Indigenous Peoples\**.

The definition of *best available information\** provides general direction on the type of information to be gathered and the extent of effort required to gather the information. To place appropriate limits on what should be involved in gathering *best available information\**, the definition notes that it should be constrained by *reasonable\** effort and cost. The intent of the term *reasonable\** is to emphasize that limits, such as cost and practicality, exist on the expectations of the effort required to gather information.

Refer to the Glossary for a full definition of *best available information\**.

#### **Engagement\* with Indigenous Peoples\***

Several *Indicators\** in this *Principle\** require *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\**. The *Organization\** is expected to implement these obligations in a manner consistent with the specific requirements of Indicator 3.1.2.

#### **Maps**

Where maps or mapped information is required by this *Principle\**, evidence of digital files, instead of hard-copy maps, is sufficient.

- 6.1 The Organization\* shall assess environmental values\* in the Management Unit\* and those values outside the Management Unit\* potentially affected by management activities\*. This assessment shall be undertaken with a level of detail, scale\* and frequency that is proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\*, and is sufficient for the purpose of deciding the necessary conservation\* measures, and for detecting and monitoring possible negative impacts of those activities. (New)**

### INTENT BOX

Information required by the *Indicators\** in this *Criterion\** is used in the assessment of other *Indicators\**, primarily in Principle 6 and Principle 9. Conformance with these *Indicators\**, that

require gathering or collating of information, 'queues up' subsequent analyses or management actions required in later *Indicators*\*.

- 6.1.1 *Best available information*\* is used to identify and define the state and condition of regional- and *landscape*\*-*scale*\* *environmental values*\* within and, where potentially affected by *management activities*\*, outside of the *Management Unit*\*.

Consistent with the *scale, intensity and risk*\* of the operation, *best available information*\* includes:

1. *Forest*\* cover (maps and quantitative summaries);
2. Distributions of *forest types*\*, *age-classes*\* and patch sizes (as required by Indicator 6.1.3) (quantitative summaries);
3. *Road*\* networks (maps and quantitative summaries);
4. *Hydrologic features*\* (maps);
5. Lake, stream and *wetland*\* classifications including identification of fish-bearing *water bodies*\* (maps and quantitative summaries);
6. Existing carbon stores, where readily available (quantitative information);
7. Percent of *protected area*\* by *ecosystem*\* classification unit;
8. Rare *ecosystems*\* (maps and quantitative summaries);
9. Identification of species at the edge of their natural ranges and outlier populations; and
10. Status of *habitat*\* (known locations, trends, extent of area) for *species at risk*\* that use *forest habitats*\* and *habitats*\* affected by forest management (quantitative summaries and range maps).

- 6.1.2 *Best available information*\* is used to identify and define the state and condition of *stand*\*- and *site-scale*\* *environmental values*\* within the *Management Unit*\*.

Consistent with the *scale, intensity and risk*\* of the operation, *best available information*\* includes:

1. Point-specific wildlife values and wildlife *habitat*\* values (e.g. mineral licks, stick nests of herons and eagles) (mapped information);
2. Locations known to be of use by *species at risk*\* and access-sensitive species (e.g. den sites, nests, areas of traditional use) (mapped information);
3. Sensitive sites, including steep slopes, shallow soils, moist soils, *wetlands*\*, and soils subject to compaction (e.g. structured clay) (mapped information);
4. Spawning grounds and other important aquatic sites (e.g. *wetlands*\* with a history of providing feeding areas for moose) (mapped information).

#### INTENT BOX

As with many *Indicators*\*, the requirements of this *Indicator*\* are to be addressed consistent with the *scale, intensity and risk*\* of the operation. The nature of some of the values identified in this *Indicator*\* may be transitory. For example, stick nests are not permanent features on the *landscape*\*, therefore, it is *reasonable*\* for those requirements to be addressed only relative to the operations identified within the short-term planning horizon (which is typically one to ten years). This is consistent with the approach taken in Indicator 6.2.2, which requires impacts of *stand*\*-level values be assessed prior to implementing *management activities*\*.

- 6.1.3 Using *best available information*\* and appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk*\* of *forest management activities*\*, an assessment of the current *forest*\* is made, addressing:

1. The distribution of *forest types*\* (quantitative information);
2. The distribution of *forest types*\* by age classes (quantitative information); and

3. The range of natural disturbance sizes and sizes of post-disturbance remnant patches.

#### INTENT BOX

Analyses required in Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4 are used in subsequent *Indicators\** that address setting of targets for different aspects of forest condition (i.e. Indicator 6.8.1 - forest community composition, and Indicator 6.8.3 - forest patches). Although *RONV\** analysis is generally considered to be more robust and appropriate for identifying preferred future forest conditions, the *Indicator\** also addresses the use of *PIC\** analysis, recognizing that the data and effort required for *RONV\** may make that approach impractical.

The *Organization\** may elect to use a mix of *RONV\** and *PIC\** analyses based on the condition of their *forest\**, for use in the subsequent Criterion 6.8 *Indicators\**.

The *Indicator\** includes requirements to characterize the present *forest\** by age classes and assess *natural conditions\** of *forest types\** by age class. This requirement is intended to recognize that some age classes may be broad, such as in Great Lakes-St. Lawrence and Acadian *forest types\**, and may include classes of multi- or all-aged *forest\**.

*Indigenous Peoples'\** traditional use of a *forest\** is consistent with the concept of *pre-industrial forests\** as describe in the Glossary.

It is the intent that all reasonably-available data be considered in the analyses for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, and *reasonable\** and defensible interval classes (i.e. for age classes and disturbance sizes) also be considered.

- 6.1.4 An assessment of the *range of natural variation\** (*RONV\**) of the *forest\** is completed. If sufficient data are not available to complete a *RONV\** assessment, an assessment of the *pre-industrial condition\** (*PIC\**) is completed. The *RONV\** or *PIC\** analysis includes:
  1. An assessment of the natural range of the amount of each *forest type\**;
  2. An assessment of the natural range of *forest types\** by age class; and
  3. An assessment of the natural range of disturbance sizes and sizes of post-disturbance remnant patches.

- 6.1.5 Assessments of *environmental values\** identified in Indicators 6.1.1 and 6.1.2 are updated with sufficient frequency to conduct *adaptive management\** depending on the *scale, intensity and risk\** of *management activities\**.

Assessments are provided in a manner such that:

1. Impacts of *management activities\** on the identified *environmental values\** and *risks\** to these values can be assessed as per Criterion 6.2;
2. Necessary *conservation\** measures to protect values can be identified as per Criterion 6.3; and
3. *Monitoring\** of impacts or environmental changes can be conducted as per Principle 8.

#### INTENT BOX

The frequency with which assessments of *environmental values\** should be updated varies with the nature of the values themselves. It is reasonable that assessments be updated based on the period over which there may be a *reasonable\** expectation of a change in status of a value, and the period over which it is possible to detect the effects of management. Therefore, for example, it is likely that the status of *habitat\** for a *species at risk\** be updated more frequently than information on lake, stream, and *wetland\** classification.



**6.2 Prior to the start of site-disturbing activities, The Organization\* shall identify and assess the scale, intensity and risk\* of potential impacts of management activities\* on the identified environmental values\*. (C6.1 P&C V4) (New)**

6.2.1 Appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of the operation, an assessment is conducted identifying potential impacts, by comparing *landscape\*-level* conditions of key *environmental values\** at the start of the present *forest management plan\** to projected future conditions for the *near term\**, and where practical, for the *long-term\** as well. At a minimum, the assessment considers:

1. *Age-class\** distribution;
2. *Forest type\** distribution;
3. Patch size distribution;
4. *Road\** density by *road\*-type*; and
5. Spatial distribution of anthropogenic disturbed areas.

**INTENT BOX**

For this *Indicator\**, the context for comparison of present and future conditions of *environmental values\** of the *forest\** is that a period of 5 to 10 years is normally used for the *near-term\** and 100 years or more is normally used to represent the *long-term\**.

This *Indicator\** contains the term 'where practical' to recognize that it is difficult and generally of less utility to make *long-term\** predictions for *road\** density by *road\** type and for the spatial distribution of disturbed areas. Therefore, it is *reasonable\** for the assessment of long-term potential impacts made to address this *Indicator's\** requirements to focus on *age-class\** and *forest type\** distributions.

6.2.2 Impacts on *stand\** level values are assessed prior to implementing *management activities\**. Appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of the operations, assessments identify impacts on *stand\** and site qualities including:

1. Coarse woody debris;
2. Density of standing dead and live trees;
3. Residual patch size and species of residuals;
4. Ecological values associated with *wetland\** and *riparian zones\**;
5. *HCVs\** that occur at a local *scale\** (e.g. *stands\** of rare trees, important bird migration sites); and
6. *Environmental values\** identified in Indicator 6.1.2.

**INTENT BOX**

This *Indicator\** does not require that measurements of the listed values be provided for each *stand\** in which operations are undertaken. The assessment may be a comparison of predicted levels of post-operational values with those determined to be appropriate for the *forest\** or *forest types\** based on *reasonable\** benchmarks (e.g. for values such as standing dead and live trees) or efforts to ensure no impairment of important values (e.g. riparian values and HCVs).

The requirement of this *Indicator\** to assess impacts "prior to implementing *management activities\**" can be addressed by assessing impacts at the start of the forest management planning period, or at the start of annual planning of operations.

Identified impacts should reflect the *silvicultural system\** used in managing *harvest areas\**.

**6.3 The Organization\* shall identify and implement effective actions to prevent negative impacts of management activities\* on the environmental values\*, and to mitigate and**

**repair those that occur, proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of these impacts.  
(C6.1 P&C V4)**

- 6.3.1 Appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of the *forest management activities\**, *management plans\** or associated documents (e.g. Ground Rules, Standard Operating Procedures, etc.) identify means to protect soils from physical damage and prevent negative impacts, based on *best management practices\**.

The *best management practices\** related to *protection\** of soils from physical damage address the following:

1. Prior identification of unstable soils and ground surfaces, and sites sensitive to compaction, rutting, and erosion;
2. Construction of *roads\** and landings on unstable soils and ground surfaces and unstable slopes;
3. Constructing and maintaining *roads\** and implementation of all forest operations to avoid or minimize erosion;
4. Use of alternative harvesting and site preparation equipment (e.g. low ground pressure equipment) and/or other mitigation measures, such as seasonal timing, and temporary suspension of activities during unfavourable weather to minimize soil rutting and compaction; and
5. Identification of precautionary damage thresholds.

- 6.3.2 The means identified in Indicator 6.3.1 to protect soils from physical damage and prevent negative impacts are effectively implemented.

- 6.3.3 Appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of the *forest management activities\**, *management plans\** or associated documents (e.g. Ground Rules, Standard Operating Procedures, etc.) identify means to protect soils from nutrient loss and prevent negative impacts, based on *best management practices\**.

The *best management practices\** related to nutrient loss address the following:

1. Identification of sites sensitive to nutrient loss;
2. Use of delimiting-at-stump and/or slash dispersal on sensitive sites;
3. Use of winter harvesting on sensitive sites;
4. Maintenance of a diversity of plants and trees on site; and
5. Identification of precautionary thresholds to protect soils from nutrient loss on sensitive sites.

**INTENT BOX**

In Canada, under most commercial forest management regimes and on most *forest\** sites, nutrient removal due to logging is not significant. This is addressed in this *Indicator\** by recognizing *scale, intensity and risk\**, and by specifically limiting the actions required in the numbered points to sensitive sites.

- 6.3.4 The means identified in Indicator 6.3.3 to protect soils from nutrient loss and prevent negative impacts are effectively implemented.

- 6.3.5 Appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of the *forest management activities\**, *management plans\** or associated documents (e.g. Ground Rules, Standard Operating Procedures, etc.) identify means to avoid or minimize loss of *productive forest\** area based on *best management practices\**.

The *best management practices\** related to loss of *productive forest\** area address the following:

1. Slash management (e.g. burning, piling, re-distribution);
2. Regeneration of *roads\**, landings and skid trails;
3. Maximum corridor widths for different classes of *roads\**;
4. Minimizing the areal extent of landings; and
5. Identification of precautionary thresholds.

6.3.6 The means identified in Indicator 6.3.5 to avoid or minimize the loss of *productive forest\** area and prevent negative impacts are effectively implemented.

6.3.7 *Management activities\** prevent negative impacts to carbon values.

#### INTENT BOX

Carbon values in managed *forests\** are protected by avoiding damage to forest soils and ensuring harvest levels are sustainable, as addressed by Indicators 6.3.1 – 6.3.6 and 5.2.1 – 5.2.3.

6.3.8 Where precautionary thresholds have been exceeded, or where *management activities\** have caused negative impacts as related to Indicators 6.3.1 – 6.3.7, measures are adopted to prevent further damage, and negative impacts are mitigated and/or repaired.

**6.4 *The Organization\* shall protect rare species\* and threatened species\* and their habitats\* in the Management Unit\* through conservation zones\*, protection areas\*, connectivity\* and/or (where necessary) other direct measures for their survival and viability. These measures shall be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\* and to the conservation\* status and ecological requirements of the rare\* and threatened species\*. The Organization\* shall take into account the geographic range and ecological requirements of rare\* and threatened species\* beyond the boundary of the Management Unit\*, when determining the measures to be taken inside the Management Unit\*. (C6.2 P&C V4)***

6.4.1 *Best available information\** is used to develop a list of *species at risk\** known or strongly suspected to exist within and adjacent to the *Management Unit\**, and to identify the *habitats\** of the *species at risk\**. The list is presented in the *management plan\** or associated documents and is updated annually. The list of *species at risk\** includes:

1. All species, subspecies, and designated populations formally listed in schedules referenced in federal or provincial endangered species/*species at risk\** legislation, or provincial wildlife/biodiversity legislation that have been classified as Endangered, Threatened, Vulnerable, Special Concern or similar designations; and
2. All species that have been assessed as 'at-risk' designation by bodies formally recognized in federal or provincial endangered species legislation (e.g. the Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada (COSEWIC), and equivalent provincial bodies).

#### INTENT BOX

Official FSC language related to Criterion 6.4 requires that it address *rare species\* and threatened species\**. This is somewhat confusing because these phrases have different meaning in a Canadian context from those identified in FSC reference material. For this *Criterion\**, the term *species at risk\** is used rather than *rare species\* and threatened species\**, as it is more clearly embodied in Canada's language regarding species whose survival is of concern. The two parts

of this *Indicator\** correspond to the differences between those species that have been regulated (or listed) as *species at risk\** in federal or provincial legislation (see point 1 in this *Indicator\**), and those species that have been assessed as *species at risk\** by COSEWIC or a similar provincial assessment body, as indicated in point 2.

This *Indicator\** requires that the *habitats\** of *species at risk\** be identified. In most circumstances, it is not practical to identify the specific *habitats\** of wide-ranging *species at risk\**, other than to note their broad *habitat\** affiliations. In these circumstances, it would be *reasonable\** for the locations of particular *species at risk\** features (such as nests or concentrations of plants) to be identified (while taking into account the requirements of Indicator 9.1.4 regarding the need to keep information on sensitive sites confidential).

*Species at risk\** that are of concern to *Indigenous Peoples\** have been identified by the Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge Subcommittee of COSEWIC.

- 6.4.2 Plans are developed by *qualified specialists\** to protect and manage the *habitat\** of those *species at risk\** identified in Indicator 6.4.1 that may be affected by *forest management activities\**. The plans address the following:
1. Identification of potential impacts of *management activities\** on *species at risk\**, their conservation status and *habitat\** associations;
  2. Means to address protection of *species at risk\** and their *habitats\** through the use of *protected areas\**, *designated conservation lands\**, managing for *habitat\* connectivity\**, provision of contiguous tracts of *habitat\**, access management and other *habitat\** management measures as appropriate; and
  3. Social and economic concerns, and concerns of *Indigenous Peoples\**.

Measures to address social and economic concerns do not constrain or impair efforts to protect and manage *species at risk\** and their *habitats\**.

#### INTENT BOX

Plans to address the needs of *species at risk\** do not need to be approved federal or provincial agencies or plans, but can be documents written to fill a gap in existing direction from governments and their regulatory agencies. Plans written specifically for a *Management Unit\**, however, should not conflict with higher-level plans that have regulatory approval unless they exceed requirements of those higher-level plans.

As described in Criterion 6.5, there is no expectation that owners of private lands will cede ownership of any portion of their property to create *protected areas\**; therefore, it is not expected that *protected areas\** will be a mechanism used in plans to protect *species at risk\** on private lands.

Addressing social and economic concerns and the concerns of *Indigenous Peoples\** is intended to support the effective development and implementation of a species plan.

Refer to the Glossary for a fuller definition of *plans for species at risk\**.

Even though woodland caribou is addressed through a supplemental *Indicator\** (6.4.5), Indicator 6.4.2 is applicable to all *species at risk\**, including woodland caribou.

- 6.4.3 *Species at risk\** and their *habitats\** are protected through implementation of plans identified in Indicator 6.4.2 by *The Organization\** or in collaboration with government resource management agencies, *overlapping tenure holders\**, and *Indigenous Peoples\**.

- 6.4.4 Where plans do not exist or are inadequate in addressing known *risks\** to a species, a *precautionary approach\** is applied. The *precautionary approach\** is applied to

management of forest *landscapes\**, local *habitat\** and other locations that are known to be important to the *species at risk\**.

- 6.4.5 Management of boreal woodland caribou habitat is implemented following approach 6.4.5a, 6.4.5b, or 6.4.5c below.

INTENT BOX
<p><b>Scope</b></p> <p>This <i>Indicator*</i> applies to boreal woodland caribou only. Refer to Annex G for information regarding mountain caribou.</p>
<p><b>Structure</b></p> <p>There are three ways to conform with this <i>Indicator*</i> as identified in Approach 6.4.5a, 6.4.5b, and 6.4.5c. Approach 6.4.5a requires that a SARA-compliant<sup>1</sup> <i>range plan*</i> based on the Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population (Environment and Climate Change Canada 2016) be implemented. If such a <i>range plan*</i> has not been prepared, either Approach 6.4.5b or 6.4.5c may be employed.</p> <p>The requirements for Approach 6.4.5b, which are based largely on the Federal Recovery Strategy (Environment Canada 2012), are articulated in Table 6.4.5. The requirements are increasingly stringent as circumstances regarding the condition of the caribou population and levels of <i>habitat*</i> disturbance on the <i>caribou range*</i> and the <i>Management Unit*</i> present an increasing <i>risk*</i> to the population.</p> <p>Approach 6.4.5c permits other methods of <i>habitat*</i> management to be implemented, provided they are based on <i>best available information*</i> and peer-reviewed science and that their development includes the involvement of <i>interested and affected stakeholders*</i> and affected <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i>.</p>
<p><b>Terminology</b></p> <p>This <i>Indicator*</i> uses several terms that are critical to its effective use. Refer to the Glossary for definitions of: <i>Critical habitat*</i>, <i>Cumulative disturbance*</i>, <i>Net expansion*</i>, and <i>Range plan*</i>.</p>
<p><b>Integration of Conservation* and Indigenous Measures in Caribou Conservation Planning</b></p> <p>Various elements of this Standard address <i>conservation*</i> measures at the <i>landscape*</i> level, as well as <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> sites and values. Efforts to integrate <i>protection*</i> measures at the local and <i>landscape*</i> scale to achieve multiple <i>objectives*</i> within <i>caribou ranges*</i> are encouraged.</p>

- 6.4.5a A *range plan\** that is SARA-compliant and addresses caribou *habitat\** management in a manner consistent with the content, measures and *objectives\** identified in the Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population (Environment and Climate Change Canada 2016), or subsequent direction from Environment and Climate Change Canada that replaces or supplements the Guidance exists, and is being implemented. At a minimum, the content of the *range plan\** being implemented includes:

---

<sup>1</sup>A SARA (Species at Risk Act)-compliant range plan is a caribou habitat management plan that has been confirmed by Environment and Climate Change Canada (ECCC) as meeting the requirements of section 7.4 of the Federal Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou, Boreal population, in Canada.

1. An assessment of the status of the population in the range, supplemented by information on the status of the population in the *Management Unit*\*;
2. An assessment of the *habitat*\*, including current *habitat*\* condition, *critical habitat*\*, and disturbance levels;
3. Identification of important *habitat*\* or *landscape*\* features, including continuous tracts of *undisturbed habitat*\*, known calving areas, and travel corridors;
4. *Habitat*\* management measures that will support self-sustaining caribou populations and protect *critical habitat*\*;
5. A demonstration of how at least 65% *undisturbed habitat*\* in the range will be achieved or maintained over time;
6. Incorporation of *Indigenous Peoples*'\* knowledge; and
7. Monitoring of *habitat*\* condition.

**INTENT BOX – Approach 6.4.5a**

Approach 6.4.5a is applicable where appropriate *range plans*\* exist. The requirements related to *range plan*\* content identified above are key provisions identified by ECCC (2016). It is the expectation of the direction provided by ECCC (2016) that *range plans*\* will be prepared by government agencies. *The Organization*\* will have responsibilities, or shared responsibilities, for implementation of the *range plan*\*.

The requirement to assess the status of the caribou population in the range is intended to lead to a conclusion as to whether the population is stable, increasing, decreasing, or unknown.

Where only a portion of the *Management Unit*\* is covered by a *range plan*\* that meets the requirements of Approach 6.4.5a, the *range plan*\* is being implemented for that portion of the *Management Unit*\*, and Approach 6.4.5b or 6.4.5c is being implemented for the remainder of the *Management Unit*\* that is within a *caribou range*\* not covered by the *range plan*\*.

Where a *range plan*\* that meets the requirements of Approach 6.4.5a above does not exist, management of caribou *habitat*\* is being implemented following Approach 6.4.5b or 6.4.5c.

6.4.5b Management of caribou *habitat*\* is implemented following the requirements of Table 6.4.5. The following requirements are also addressed:

1. Updated measurements of *cumulative disturbance*\* are used, where available, provided that the methodology used in calculating *cumulative disturbance*\* and definitions of human-induced and natural disturbance are comparable to those employed by Environment Canada (2012).
2. *Best efforts*\* are made to keep projected levels of *cumulative disturbance*\* on *caribou ranges*\* below 35% when a large natural disturbance occurs that significantly elevates the levels of *cumulative disturbance*\*. *Expert*\* input is used to identify how to adjust *management activities*\* following large natural disturbances.

**Table 6.4.5.** Requirements for the management of caribou *habitat*\*.

The numbers in the gray-shaded cells refer to the numbered requirements listed in the lower part of the table. The letters in the cells are for reference only.

Caribou range* Population Status	Range Risk* Category (% cumulative disturbance*)	Management Unit* Disturbance Category (% cumulative disturbance* in the portion of the Management Unit* that overlaps caribou range*)	
		≤35%	>35%
Stable or Increasing	Low (≤20%)	Cell A: 1	Cell B: 2
	Moderate (>20-35%)	C: 1, 3	D: 2, 4
	High (>35%)	E: 2, 5	F: 2, 4, 5, 6
Decreasing or Unknown <sup>2</sup>	Low (≤20%)	G: 1	H: 2
	Moderate (>20-35%)	I: 2, 3, 5, 6	J: 2, 4, 5, 6
	High (>35%)	K: 2, 4, 5, 6	L: 2, 4, 5, 6
Description of Required Management Strategies			
1.	Carefully planned implementation of <i>forest management activities</i> * that follow a <i>precautionary approach</i> * is permitted.		
2.	Carefully planned implementation of <i>forest management activities</i> * that follow a <i>precautionary approach</i> * is permitted. Access is managed to minimize impacts on caribou and caribou <i>habitat</i> *.		
3.	Planning efforts are in progress to maintain <i>cumulative disturbance</i> * within the <i>Management Unit</i> * at ≤ 35%.		
4.	At least 50% of the <i>undisturbed habitat</i> * as of January 1, 2018 (using the most up-to-date data for disturbance available) in the portion of the <i>Management Unit</i> * that is within a <i>caribou range</i> * is set aside from forest management for 30-50 years and remains reserved for the duration of that period. ECCC (2016) is used as a basis for identifying and managing <i>undisturbed habitat</i> * to be set aside. <i>Cumulative disturbances</i> * in the remaining areas only increase in the <i>near-term</i> * when linked to a plan demonstrating a shift to ≤35% at the <i>Management Unit</i> * level in the coming 30-50 years.		
5.	Planning efforts consider the level of <i>cumulative disturbance</i> * at the range level and contribute to efforts to maintain or reduce range disturbance to ≤ 35%.		
6.	<i>Habitat restoration</i> * is in progress.		

INTENT BOX – Approach 6.4.5b
<p><b>35% Benchmark for Disturbed Area</b></p> <p>Approach 6.4.5b uses a disturbance level of 35% as the high-risk* threshold in Table 6.4.5 <i>Requirements for the management of caribou habitat</i>*. The threshold is not intended to serve as a target level of disturbance, but as a level beyond which significant measures are necessary to address the state of <i>habitat</i>* on <i>caribou ranges</i>*. However, 35% is not a 'tipping point' beyond which caribou population will switch from sustainable to unsustainable. Rather, this management threshold, prescribed by Canada's Federal Recovery Strategy for the boreal population of woodland caribou, is a point along a continuum of <i>risk</i>* for boreal</p>

<sup>2</sup> As described in the intent box for Approach 6.4.5b below, requirements associated with the population status of decreasing or unknown also apply to circumstances in which the population is stable or increasing due to extraordinary human intervention.

caribou that carries with it some uncertainty. Specifically, the Federal Recovery Strategy notes that, "This recovery strategy identifies 65% undisturbed habitat in a range as the disturbance management threshold, which provides a measurable probability (60%) for a local population to be self-sustaining. This threshold is considered a minimum threshold because at 65% undisturbed habitat there remains a significant *risk\** (40%) that local populations will not be self-sustaining."

The significance of the 35% benchmark is also recognized in the Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou which states, "A demonstration of how at least 65% undisturbed habitat in the range will be achieved or maintained over time on the landscape is essential to the range plan." This is recognized in the structure of Table 6.4.5 and several of its requirements.

### **Spatial Aspects**

Some *Management Units\** may include areas both within and outside *caribou ranges\**. For this Approach, the management requirements identified in Table 6.4.5 are to be assessed based only on the area of the *Forest Management Unit\** within *caribou ranges\**.

If a *Management Unit\** extends into more than one *caribou range\**, this Approach's requirements based on the level of disturbance within the *Management Unit\** are to be addressed separately for the distinct portions of the *Forest Management Unit\** in each *caribou range\**.

Figures 1 to 3 in Annex G provide examples of the Approach's requirements in different situations.

### **The Importance of Population Information**

The framework in Table 6.4.5 is based on *cumulative disturbance\** and caribou population status in *caribou ranges\**. The conventional means of evaluating caribou population status is through the use of data on demographic trends, such as population growth rate, calf recruitment, and female survival. Table 6.4.5 recognizes this by specifically identifying management requirements associated with the status of populations within *caribou ranges\**.

There may be circumstances in which a caribou population is stable or increasing due to, or with the assistance of, extraordinary human intervention, such as predator control or fencing of large areas. Based on the weight of evidence, if a population is believed to be stable or increasing only because of such measures, the requirements associated with the population status of "decreasing or unknown" should be used as a basis for evaluation of conformance with the requirements of Table 6.4.5.

### **Table 6.4.5 – Requirement 4**

Requirement 4 involves an assessment of the state of caribou *habitat\** within the *Management Unit\** as of January 1, 2018 (using the most up-to-date data for disturbance available). *The Organization\** may either compile information, or access already-existing spatial information, on the extent of disturbance in the *Management Unit\** so that the requirement to set aside at least 50% of the undisturbed area for at least 30-50 years can be addressed.

The requirement states that ECCC (2016) is to be used as a basis for identifying and managing *undisturbed habitat\** to be set aside. Refer to Section 5 ("Managing the 65% *Undisturbed Habitat\**") of ECCC (2016) for important considerations related to this direction.

### **Habitat\* Restoration\***

As it is used in Table 6.4.5 *Requirements for the management of Caribou Habitat*, *habitat\* restoration\** is the process of returning *habitat\** to a condition suitable for use by caribou and/or a state comparable to its condition prior to disturbance, in the context of the overall



*caribou range\** condition. The ultimate intent of *habitat\* restoration\** is the recovery and persistence of caribou populations.

**Approach 6.4.5b, Requirement 1 – Measures of cumulative disturbance\***

This requirement identifies that approaches other than those used by Environment Canada may be used in quantifying *cumulative disturbance\**. This refers to the increasingly standard practice by provinces and territories to use provincial/territorial datasets to quantify disturbance, rather than the national disturbance layer in Environment Canada (2012).

**Approach 6.4.5b, Requirement 2 – Best efforts\* to keep projected levels of disturbance below 35%**

In the boreal forests, large natural disturbances, such as fire or windthrow, may significantly affect levels of *cumulative disturbance\** in *Management Units\** and *caribou ranges\** and add to overall *risk\** to caribou persistence in a *caribou range\**. Large disturbances outside the *Management Unit\** may affect the level of *cumulative disturbance\** in the *caribou range\** in which the *Management Unit\** exists.

6.4.5c Through an *efficient collaborative process\** with self-identified *interested and affected stakeholders\** and affected *Indigenous Peoples\**, a *caribou conservation\** approach consistent with the Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population (ECCC 2016) is implemented for the *Management Unit\**.

Informed by *best available information\** and peer-reviewed science, the approach fosters stewardship of caribou *habitat\** that supports self-sustaining caribou populations. The approach includes:

1. An assessment of the status of population in the *Management Unit\**;
2. An assessment of the current *habitat\** condition, *critical habitat\**, and disturbance levels;
3. Identification of important *habitat\** or *landscape\** features, including continuous tracts of *undisturbed habitat\**, known calving areas and travel corridors;
4. *Habitat\** management measures that will support self-sustaining caribou populations and protect *critical habitat\**;
5. Incorporation of a *habitat\** disturbance threshold informed by *experts\** to meet *habitat\** requirements for the *caribou range\** in which the *Management Unit\** exists;
6. Respect for, and effective *engagement\** of, *Indigenous Peoples\**;
7. Incorporation of knowledge from interested and *affected stakeholders\**;
8. Evaluation of socio-economic impacts; and
9. Monitoring of *habitat\** condition and population response.

**INTENT BOX – Approach 6.4.5c**

In the absence of a *range plan\** (Approach 6.4.5a) and in recognition that the scientific basis for managing caribou *habitat\** continues to evolve, this Approach provides a means to implement management other than that identified by Approach 6.4.5b.

**Engagement\* and Development of Caribou Conservation Plans**

This Approach requires that *engagement\** be undertaken with self-identified *stakeholders\** and affected *Indigenous Peoples\**. Efforts to engage could include contacting *stakeholders\** with a history of FSC involvement and/or interest in conservation\* and informing them of the opportunity to participate. *Stakeholders\** who express an interest are “self-identified”. There is no requirement for *The Organization\** to engage *stakeholders\** who do not express an interest.

Although the *efficient collaborative process\** is similar to that identified in Criterion 6.5, the *stakeholders\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** involved need not be the same because the topics involved (i.e. caribou *habitat\** management and *Conservation Areas Networks\**) require different sets of knowledge and may involve different groups of *stakeholders\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**.

It is *reasonable\** that *The Organization\**, in collaboration with *stakeholders\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**, develop a process for efficient cooperation that may involve delegation of representation across groups that share common interests.

The results of the socio-economic evaluation (item 8 in the *Indicator\**) are intended to improve the effectiveness of protection of caribou populations and their habitats.

#### **Incorporation of New Science and Information**

This Approach facilitates incorporation of new science and information into the means used to manage caribou *habitat\**. The Approach requires the use of *best available information\** and peer-reviewed science. This perspective is consistent with that identified in the Range Plan Guidance (ECCC 2016) that requires strong scientific evidence to support managing the range below the 65% undisturbed threshold.

Although Approach 6.4.5c can be based on the use of more recent and credible information and science, the nature of its requirements regarding assessment of *habitat\**, habitat management measures, monitoring, etc. are consistent with those identified for Approach 6.4.5a.

- 6.4.6 Training is provided to all relevant *workers\** in field operations and planning on the identification of *species at risk\**, and on appropriate measures to take when a *species at risk\** or sign of a *species at risk\** is identified during field operations.
- 6.4.7 When a *species at risk\** or sign of a *species at risk\** is identified during field operations, *protection\** measures consistent with the plans or *precautionary approach\** identified in Indicators 6.4.3 and 6.4.4 are implemented and relevant information is immediately provided to the appropriate resource management agencies.

#### **INTENT BOX**

This *Indicator\** refers to "signs" of a *species at risk\**. Signs can include nests, tracks, dens, or other indications that a species exists in the *forest\**.

- 6.4.8 *The Organization\** demonstrates within the scope of its authority and within its *sphere of influence\** how it is addressing the following:
1. Prevention of illegal hunting, trapping, and fishing of *species at risk\**;
  2. Collection of data on populations and *habitats\** of *species at risk\**;
  3. Management of *habitat\** for *species at risk\**; and
  4. Monitoring of *habitats\** and populations of *species at risk\**.

#### **INTENT BOX**

This *Indicator's\** requirement that *The Organization\** work within the scope of its authority is intended to recognize limitations on the legal responsibilities and rights associated with various *tenure\** situations. Owners of private lands have more rights associated with activities such as access management, *habitat\** manipulation, etc. than *The Organizations\** that practice forestry on tenured lands, although all are subject to laws related *species at risk\**.

- 6.5 **The Organization\* shall identify and protect representative sample areas\* of native ecosystems\* and/or restore\* them to more natural conditions\*. Where representative sample areas\* do not exist or are insufficient, The Organization\* shall restore\* a proportion of the Management Unit\* to more natural conditions\*. The size of the areas and the measures taken for their protection\* or restoration\*, including within plantations\*, shall be proportionate to the conservation\* status and value of the ecosystems\* at the landscape\* level, and the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\*. (C6.4 and 10.5 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)**

#### INTENT BOX

##### **Overview**

This *Criterion\** addresses effort to add to the *Conservation Area Network\** in the *Management Unit\** by filling gaps in the existing network with new *designated conservation lands\** and *secondary conservation lands\**. The role of *The Organization\**, as expressed through this *Criterion's\* Indicators\** is to lay the groundwork for working towards and achieving a vision for the *Conservation Areas Network\**.

##### **Terminology**

A *Conservation Areas Network\** is comprised of those portions of *Management Unit\** and adjacent *area of ecological influence\** for which *conservation\** is the primary, and in some circumstances, *exclusive objective\**. On public forests, the *Conservation Areas Network\** is the sum of *protected areas\** and *designated conservation lands\**. On private forests, the *Conservation Areas Network\** also includes *secondary conservation lands\**.

*Protected areas\** are lands protected by legislation, regulation, or government land-use policy. Provincial parks are an example of these lands. *Designated conservation lands\** are to be managed through the exclusion of *forest management activities\** in recognition of their ecological and/or cultural values. Forest management is permitted on *secondary conservation lands\** provided that it maintains the ecological and cultural qualities that are the basis of the lands' designation.

Refer to the Glossary for complete definitions of terms used in this *Criterion\**.

##### **Objectives\* - Public Forests**

On public forests, a *long-term\* objective\** of *designated conservation lands\** is to transition to *legal\** protected status (i.e. *protected areas\**). However, it is recognized that the ultimate decision to move those *designated conservation lands\** to protected status belongs to governments, not *The Organization\**. Creation of *protected areas\** is usually the product of broad government initiatives that often include *engagement\** with *stakeholders\**, communities, and with *Indigenous Peoples\**. Lack of immediate increases in the regulated protected area network (i.e. within the period of validity of a certificate) should be viewed in the context of the complexity of the processes involved and the challenges inherent in balancing ecological, social, economic and social interests. It does not necessarily imply failure to meet this *Criterion's\* Indicators\**.

The process of attempting to move *designated conservation lands\** within the traditional territories of *Indigenous Peoples\** to *legal\** protected status can only proceed based on their *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\**.

*Designated conservation lands\** are expected to be permanently protected whether or not they are successful in transitioning to legally protected status. In other words, in the indefinite time between identification of *designated conservation lands\** and their movement to official

legally protected status, the lands are to be exempted from *forest management activities\**, except in relatively rare circumstances (described in Indicator 6.5.9).

### **Objectives\* - Private Forests**

Privately owned forests are expected to contribute to the *Conservation Areas Network\** through the identification and creation of *designated conservation lands\** and *secondary conservation lands\**. However, private landowners are not expected to attempt to move *designated conservation lands\** or *secondary conservation lands\** to legislated status on their lands.

### **Relationship with Principle 9**

This *Criterion\** focuses on identification of lands that serve to fill gaps in the *Conservation Areas Network\** for which *protection\** through the exclusion or limitation of *forest management activities\** should be a priority. Therefore, there is overlap between the mandate of this *Criterion\** and the role of *High Conservation Values (HCVs)\**, identified in Principle 9. As described in the HCV Common Guidance<sup>3</sup>, and consistent with the HCV Framework provided in this Standard (Annex D), *HCVs\** can include areas that require total *protection\**, and areas that can be used to produce forest products if management is consistent with maintaining or enhancing *HCVs\**. Therefore, some areas identified as *HCVs\** can also be *designated conservation lands\** and *secondary conservation lands\**, and others, while still playing important roles in *management activities\** and *conservation\**, may not be. The identification of *designated conservation lands\** and *secondary conservation lands\** does not in any way detract from the importance of *HCVs\** in which some *forest management activities\** may still occur.

- 6.5.1 For *forests\** managed on public lands, an efficient process is used to *engage\** *Indigenous Peoples\** whose traditional territory overlaps the *Management Unit\** and self-identified *interested and affected stakeholders\**, regarding the identification and management of *designated conservation lands\**.

The process includes the development of a mechanism to achieve *consensus\** on the identified *designated conservation lands\**.

#### **INTENT BOX**

This *Indicator\** requires that an *engagement\** process be undertaken with self-identified *stakeholders\**. Self-identified *stakeholders\** are *stakeholders\** with a history of FSC involvement and/or interest in *conservation\** and who express an interest in participating when informed of the opportunity to be involved. There is no requirement for *The Organization\** to *engage\** *stakeholders\** who do not express an interest.

Dealing with many individuals and/or groups with overlapping interests can lead to an unwieldy process and slow progress. It is *reasonable\** that *The Organization\**, in collaboration with the *stakeholders\** and affected *Indigenous Peoples\**, develop a process for efficient cooperation that may involve delegation of representation across groups that share common interests. Delegation requires the support of *stakeholders\** and affected *Indigenous Peoples\**.

- 6.5.2 Using *best available information\**, an analysis is used to identify potential gaps in the completeness of the *Conservation Areas Network\** in the *Management Unit\**. Elements considered for inclusion in the gap analysis address *enduring features\**, representation of

<sup>3</sup>HCV Resource Network. 2013. Common Guidance for the Identification of High Conservation Values. Proforest and the High Conservation Values Network. 63 p.

native ecosystems\*, landscape\* connectivity\*, High Conservation Values\* and High Conservation Value areas\*.

The analysis uses inputs from the entire *area of ecological influence\**.

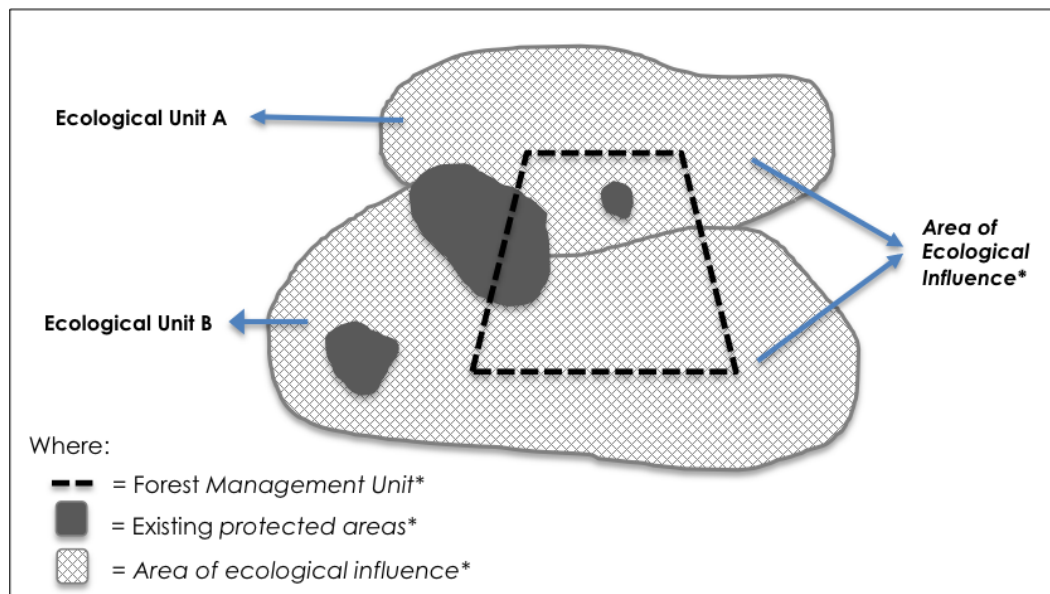
The results of the gap analysis are mapped.

#### INTENT BOX

##### **Area of Ecological Influence\***

The *area of ecological influence\** (AEI) includes the entire area encompassed by ecological units (e.g. *ecodistricts\**, biogeoclimatic zones) that occur at least partly within the *Management Unit\**. The intent of using an area that extends beyond the *Management Unit\** in the gap analysis is to incorporate a broader *landscape\** perspective into consideration of the *Conservation Areas Network\**. An analysis that takes account of a broad *landscape\** (i.e. including the *area of ecological influence\**) is better suited to providing an accurate assessment of *conservation\** gaps. There may be circumstances in which there is little *protected area\** encompassed by the *Management Unit\**, but considerably more in the *area of ecological influence\**. In such a circumstance, there may be fewer gaps than would be identified if only lands encompassed by *Management Unit\** were used in the analysis.

In the figure below, the *Management Unit\** overlaps two ecological units, so the *area of ecological influence\** includes the total areas encompassed by both ecological units. To provide the most useful gap analysis, data from the entire *area of ecological influence\** should be used. However, depending on the size of the *area of ecological influence\**, and the availability of data formatted to facilitate efficient analysis, the level of effort required to incorporate all elements identified in the *Indicator\** that occur outside the *Management Unit\** may be unrealistic. A *reasonable\** starting point for the analysis would consider information on the size and location of *protected areas\** from outside the *Management Unit\**.



6.5.3 A *peer review\** of the gap analysis is completed by one or more *independent experts\**.

6.5.4 For *forests\** managed on public land, the gap analysis and *peer review\** are made *publicly available\**, including in electronic format.

6.5.5 Areas that address *Conservation Areas Network\** gaps are identified as *designated conservation lands\** or *secondary conservation lands\**.

INTENT BOX

As noted previously, *designated conservation lands\** may occur on both private and public forests, whereas *secondary conservation lands\** may occur only on private forests.

6.5.6 *Designated conservation lands\** and *secondary conservation lands\** are of sufficient size to ensure the values they are intended to address are effectively protected based on a *precautionary approach\**.

6.5.7 The *Conservation Areas Network\** comprises a minimum of 10% of the area of the *Management Unit\**. The extent of the *Conservation Areas Network\** on the *Management Unit\** is identified by considering:

1. Relative extent of the *Conservation Areas Network\** in the *area of ecological influence\**;
2. Contribution of the *Conservation Areas Network\** to the attainment of regional provincial, national and international (e.g. Aichi biodiversity targets) *conservation\** and *protected area\** targets;
3. Best available scientific information and research regarding appropriate *conservation\** targets;
4. Previous contributions of *The Organization\** to *Conservation Areas Network\** on lands that were formerly within the *Management Unit\**; and
5. Socio-economic considerations (e.g. implications for wood availability and harvest levels).

Evidence is provided to validate any claim of the existence of *protected areas\** that were formerly within the *Management Unit\**.

INTENT BOX

As described earlier, on public forests, the *Conservation Areas Network\** is the sum of *protected areas\** and *designated conservation lands\**, whereas on private forests, it also includes *secondary conservation lands\**. This *Indicator\** requires that the *Conservation Areas Network\** must comprise a minimum of 10% of the area of the *Management Unit\**. However, 10% should not be also interpreted as a maximum or desirable level in all circumstances. There may be instances in which a more extensive *Conservation Areas Network\** is warranted based on the factors considered in the gap analysis (Indicator 6.5.2), and the distribution of *protected areas\** and other ecologically and culturally important lands within the *area of ecological influence\**. Provided that at least the 10% threshold is reached, the overall size should reflect a balance of the points listed in this *Indicator\**.

6.5.8 For forests\* managed on public land, *consensus\** is achieved on the identification of *designated conservation lands\** through implementation of the process identified in Indicator 6.5.1.

INTENT BOX

Indicator 6.5.8 builds upon the process identified in Indicator 6.5.1. Indicator 6.5.1 requires *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\** and *stakeholders\** to build a process to achieve *consensus\**. It is expected that the process developed to achieve *consensus\** includes the

participation of *The Organization\**, and that the interests of *The Organization\** be among those considered in the achievement of *consensus\**.

*Consensus\** should be the result of a process seeking to take into account the views of *The Organization\**, *Indigenous Peoples\**, and *stakeholders\**, and to reconcile any conflicting arguments. It need not imply unanimity.

- 6.5.9 Forest operations including harvesting, *silviculture\**, and *road\** building, are not undertaken by *The Organization\** within *designated conservation lands\** except when confirmed by *independent expert\** opinion as appropriate to achieve *objectives\** associated with *restoration\** or maintenance of *natural conditions\**.

#### INTENT BOX

Most organizations operating on public land can only control *management activities\** within their allocated rights as *tenure\** holders, and so this *Indicator\** refers specifically to "Forest operations...undertaken by *The Organization\**", recognizing that other industrial operations may have overlapping *tenure\** rights. Indicator 6.5.11 addresses obligations of *The Organization\** related to its *sphere of influence\**.

In rare cases, *road\** building may be necessary to conduct management operations in areas beyond *designated conservation lands\**. Such *road\** building and maintenance within a *designated conservation land\** should only be undertaken when use or creation of existing or alternate access would be extremely difficult and result in more ecological damage than alternatives.

- 6.5.10 For *forests\** managed on private land, forest operations are undertaken on *secondary conservation lands\** only when they maintain the ecological and cultural qualities that are the basis of the lands' designation.

- 6.5.11 For *forests\** managed on public land, *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\** to achieve the following:

1. Move *designated conservation lands\** to full *legal\** regulated status;
2. Recognition of *designated conservation lands\** in *management plans\** and other relevant documents; and
3. Avoid harvesting, *road\** building and other operations proposed by other *tenure\** holders that are not consistent with *conservation\* objectives\** of *designated conservation lands\**.

*Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** is obtained prior to efforts to work within *The Organization's\** *sphere of influence\** to achieve regulated status for *designated conservation lands\** that overlap *Indigenous Peoples'\** traditional territories (per Criterion 3.2).

#### INTENT BOX

##### **Sphere of Influence\* and FPIC\***

This *Indicator\** recognizes that *Free, Prior, and Informed Consent\** of *Indigenous Peoples\** is necessary before attempts should be made to move *designated conservation lands\** on traditional territories to legally protected status. *The Organization\** is expected to inquire with *Indigenous Peoples\** regarding their interest in seeking *legal\** protection for lands in their traditional territories. Where *FPIC\** is not obtained, the lands are expected to remain as *designated conservation lands\**, but efforts on the part of *The Organization\** to obtain legally protected status do not proceed. Requirements 2 and 3 in the above *Indicator\** are to be

addressed regardless of the attainment of *FPIC\**, as these requirements do not relate to the attainment of legally protected status.

**After Designated Conservation Lands\* have been moved to legislated status**

When an area of *designated conservation lands\** is moved to regulated protected status through collaborative efforts with the regional, provincial or federal government, new *designated conservation lands\** need not be identified to replace the ones that have been granted regulated status, although the *objectives\** associated with achieving the total area of the *conservation areas network\**, as identified in Indicator 6.5.7, would remain in place. The success of moving *designated conservation lands\** to regulated status should be noted by the auditors along with the gap that it addressed so that in future gap analyses, assessments and audits, *The Organization\** will not need to 'replace' the formally protected *designated conservation lands\** with new ones.

6.5.12 The completed gap analysis is reviewed at least every five years, and updated if necessary, based on availability of new information or advances in gap analysis methodology.

If substantial changes to the gap analysis occur as a result of the update, a *peer review\** is undertaken.

**INTENT BOX**

This *Indicator\** requires that the gap analysis be reviewed at least every five years. This does not necessarily mean that the gap analysis will need to be redone at that interval. As the *Indicator\** requires, the analysis will only need to be redone or updated if relevant new information or an improved methodology becomes available.

For example, new information that may necessitate updating the gap analysis could include the creation of new *protected areas\** that address some of the previously-identified gaps, or an improved *landscape\** classification system that provides an improved basis for identifying gaps. The bar for deciding whether there is a sufficient basis for proceeding with an update should be neither too high nor too low. The expectation is that updates only are considered if it is likely that the new analysis will identify meaningfully different gaps from those identified in the previous analysis.

**6.6 The Organization\* shall effectively maintain the continued existence of naturally occurring native species\* and genotypes\*, and prevent losses of biological diversity\*, especially through habitat\* management in the Management Unit\*. The Organization\* shall demonstrate that effective measures are in place to manage and control hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting. (C6.2 and C6.3 P&C V4)**

6.6.1 For all *harvest areas\** including those on which salvage operations following natural disturbances are to be undertaken, *best available information\** is used to identify targets for the post-harvest forest composition for:

1. Density and spatial distribution of residual (live and dead) trees and patches within *harvest areas\**;
2. Size distribution of live and dead trees;
3. Size distribution of patches;
4. Residual species composition; and
5. Management of coarse woody debris.

Targets are appropriate for the *silvicultural systems\** (e.g. clear-cut, selection, shelterwood) in use.



Targets are set taking concerns for *worker\** safety into account.

INTENT BOX

In some circumstances, it may not be possible or practical to set quantitative targets. For example, it may be too difficult to measure coarse woody debris, and there may be uncertainty about appropriate amounts to maintain. Nonetheless, it is known that woody debris plays an important ecological role, and so targets may include the way management practices will address maintenance on the site, such as minimizing the crushing of large downed logs, leaving of *unmerchantable\** portions of logs at the stump, etc. In other cases, practical considerations may constrain the ability of *The Organization\** to set targets; for example, where deciduous trees are harvested in the winter it may not be possible to set specific targets for retention of dead trees. Assessment of conformance with this *Indicator\** should take considerations such as these into account.

6.6.2 *Management activities\** are implemented to achieve the targets identified in Indicator 6.6.1.

6.6.3 *Management activities\** maintain regionally uncommon *stand\**- and site-scale ecological elements and important *habitat features\**, including:

1. *Ancient forest\** patches;
2. Rare sites and plant communities as defined by ecological classification systems;
3. Vernal pools;
4. Small *wetlands\**;
5. Den sites;
6. Nest sites for birds of prey;
7. Ungulate calving sites/areas;
8. Spawning sites for fish;
9. Important bird migration sites;
10. *Super-canopy trees\**;
11. Wallows; and
12. Mineral licks.

INTENT BOX

*Best available information\** should be used to identify *stand\**- and site-scale *environmental values\** as required in Indicator 6.1.2. Although some *habitat features\** may not be identified before the start of operations, it is still necessary to address the requirements of this *Indicator\** to maintain those values. *Management activities\** can maintain these values by, for example, ensuring that operational staff have adequate tools and training to recognize the values and implement appropriate protective measures. However, it is recognized that the season during which the operation takes place can make it difficult or impossible to identify some values (e.g. it would likely not be possible to identify den sites, very small *wetlands\** or wallows during winter operations).

6.6.4 *Best efforts\** are made to maintain *habitat features\** and increase the quality and quantity of *habitat features\**, including those identified in Indicator 6.6.3, that have suffered *long-term\** degradation due to *forest management activities\**.

INTENT BOX

In the context of this *Indicator\**, degradation does not simply mean a decline in short-term abundance, but is a more serious condition in which the state of a *habitat feature\** does not provide the ecological value it normally does in the *forest\**. It would be difficult or impractical

to attempt to improve the quality or quantity of some *habitat features\**, such as willows, for example, that may have declined. It is possible, however, to enhance or *restore\** others, such as spawning beds for fish that have been affected by erosion caused by *forest management activities\**, for example. Implementation and auditing of this *Indicator\** will require good judgement, focusing on practical efforts that are likely to produce tangible results.

6.6.5 *The Organization\** works within the scope of its authority and within its *sphere of influence\** to implement sustainable management related to hunting, fishing, and trapping, and collecting activities for which there are known concerns.

#### INTENT BOX

This *Indicator\** is similar to Indicator 6.4.7 in the manner in which it requires *The Organization\** to work within the scope of their authority and within their *sphere of influence\**. Refer to the Intent Box for that *Indicator\** for discussion on these topics.

**6.7 *The Organization\** shall protect or restore\* natural watercourses, water bodies\*, riparian zones\* and their connectivity\*. *The Organization\** shall avoid negative impacts on water quality and quantity and mitigate and remedy those that occur. (C6.5 and 10.2 P&C V4)**

6.7.1 *Best management practices\** are in place that identify measures to protect *water bodies\**, *riparian zones\**, and water quality. At a minimum, the measures address the following:

1. Buffer widths sufficient to protect water quality, aquatic and emergent vegetation and *habitat\** for fish, invertebrates, other aquatic species, and terrestrial species;
2. Machine-free zones that are not entered except where required for construction of crossings or other approved *infrastructure\** or *restoration\** of riparian functions or *water bodies\**;
3. Restriction of in-stream activities to avoid sensitive fisheries seasons;
4. Prevention of negative changes in water quantity and quality including through maintaining stream shading sufficient to protect against deleterious changes in stream temperature;
5. Minimizing disruption of natural drainage patterns, including when locating and constructing *roads\**, landings and skidways;
6. Prevention of sedimentation of *water bodies\**; and
7. *Protection\** of *intermittent streams\** and *ephemeral streams\**.

#### INTENT BOX

*Intermittent\** and *ephemeral streams\** can be important aquatic features, providing *habitat\** and hydrologic function. This *Indicator\** requires that these streams be protected during *forest management activities\**. In many circumstances, it is not *reasonable\** to expect that *intermittent\** and *ephemeral streams\** will be mapped as they are not apparent at all times of the year and are frequently hidden by forest canopy. Nonetheless, *protection\** of these *water bodies\** is possible and could be demonstrated through the provision of training and instructions to *workers\** so that appropriate steps can be taken when streams are encountered during operations.

*Indicators\** in Principle 10 address the need to protect *water bodies\** from chemicals and *fertilizers\**.

6.7.2 *The best management practices\** identified in Indicator 6.7.1 are being implemented.

- 6.7.3 *Restoration\** activities are implemented for watercourses, *water bodies\**, *riparian zones\** and their *connectivity\**, water quantity and water quality:
1. Where *protection\** measures implemented by *The Organization\** fail to protect *environmental values\** from impacts of *forest management activities\**, and/or
  2. When damage has been caused to these *environmental values\** by past activities of *The Organization\** or previous forest managers.

INTENT BOX

*The Organization\** is encouraged to identify appropriate benchmarks for defining when *restoration\** activities are necessary. These benchmarks could address the gravity of existing or likely environmental degradation, impacts on *affected stakeholders\**, impacts on forest operations, safety of all users and cost.

Instances in which previous measures to protect water quality or aquatic systems are not up to contemporary standards, but are effective nonetheless, the most prudent course of management action may be to leave the existing measures, such as box culverts, in place. In some instances, attempts to fix antiquated measures may result in more damage than simply leaving the measure in place. *The Organization\** is expected to use best judgement in these circumstances and be able to validate their course of action based on experience and/or *best management practices\**.

- 6.7.4 Where *management activities\** that are not within its direct control have the potential to significantly affect *water bodies\** and/or *riparian zones\**, *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\** to attempt to prevent degradation, implement protective measures and remedy instances in which past measures are no longer effective.
- 6.7.5 *Best management practices\** are in place that identify measures to control changes in flow in *watersheds\** with significant downstream values resulting from *management activities\**. Appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of operations the measures include:
1. Employing analytical approaches to identify and avoid hydrological impacts associated with decreased or increased flows caused by *forest management activities\**;
  2. Management of *cutblock\** and *harvest area\** sizes, elevation and aspect;
  3. Avoiding subsurface and surface drainage interception and/or diversion by *roads\** and trails;
  4. Planning and implementing harvesting to minimize *road\** density; and
  5. Prompt *road\** reclamation and reforestation of logged sites.

INTENT BOX

Potential impacts of forestry on peak flow are greatest in areas with moderate to steep topography. In Canada, such areas occur primarily in British Columbia and western Alberta, but occur in other parts of the country too. The need to address this *Indicator\** is based on *scale, intensity and risk\**, so consideration of topography will influence the extent to which *The Organization\** is expected to implement the requirements of this *Indicator\**.

This *Indicator\** requires that analytical approaches be used to identify and avoid hydrological impacts associated with increased flows, but does not specify which approaches are to be used as regional differences in regulatory, environment, topography and downstream values may play a role in deciding which approaches are most appropriate.

- 6.7.6 The *best management practices\** identified in Indicator 6.7.5 are being effectively implemented.
- 6.8 **The Organization\* shall manage the landscape\* in the Management Unit\* to maintain and/or restore\* a varying mosaic of species, sizes, ages, spatial scales and regeneration cycles appropriate for the landscape values\* in that region, and for enhancing environmental and economic resilience\*. (C10.2 and 10.3 P&C V4)**
- 6.8.1 Based on the analyses undertaken for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, targets are identified for the distribution of *forest types\** and age classes of *forest types\** that are intended to maintain, *restore\**, or enhance the condition of the *forest\** appropriate to the regional context.
- Targets may take anticipated impacts of climate change into account provided they are based on *best available information\**.
- Target *age-class\** distributions represent the full range of *natural forest\** ages such that *old forest\** classes are incorporated into the targets.

#### INTENT BOX

*The Organization\** should identify targets that require them to make diligent efforts to achieve progressive outcomes related to forest structure and composition that take the regional context into account. In regions with a long history of settlement and land conversion, where the *forest\** has been significantly altered from a *pre-industrial condition\**, an appropriate target may include the maintenance of *natural forests\**. In *forests\** that have not been significantly altered, appropriate targets may take into account opportunities to return the *forest\** to a more natural condition. Such targets may be based on the use of the *interquartile range\** where a *RONV\** analysis has been used in Indicator 6.1.4.

As identified in the Intent Box for Indicator 6.1.4, there may be circumstances in which it is appropriate to use a blended approach of *range of natural variation\** and *pre-industrial condition\** to set targets for the future forest condition. In these circumstances *The Organization\** is expected to implement the requirements of this *Indicator\** for those portions of the *forest\** that are most well-suited for each approach.

- 6.8.2 Measures are being implemented to achieve the targets for distributions of *forest types\** and age classes of *forest types\** identified in Indicator 6.8.1.
- 6.8.3 Based on the analyses undertaken for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, targets are identified for the size distribution of forest patches to maintain, *restore\**, or enhance the condition of the *forest\** as appropriate to the regional context.
- The targets also take into account the needs of *species at risk\** that require large areas of contiguous *habitat\**.

#### INTENT BOX

As for Indicator 6.8.1, *The Organization\** should identify targets that require them to make diligent efforts to achieve progressive outcomes related to forest structure and composition, and take the regional context into account. Considerations should include the extent to which the size distribution of forest patches of the present *forest\** differs from *pre-industrial conditions\**. *Pre-industrial\** and *natural conditions\** may not be appropriate targets given that large disturbances may not be socially acceptable.

6.8.4 Measures are being implemented to achieve the targets for forest patch sizes, identified in Indicator 6.8.3.

*These include:*

1. Maintain contiguous blocks of *forest\** that are of natural-disturbance origin;
2. Aggregate existing and planned disturbances as a means of creating and maintaining large contiguous blocks; and
3. Minimize the extent of *roads\** and other linear disturbances in the contiguous blocks, including through removal and reclamation.

#### INTENT BOX

This *Indicator\** involves efforts to maintain contiguous blocks of *forest\** that are of natural disturbance origin, while implementing measures to achieve the targets identified in Indicator 6.8.3. This requirement is not intended to be additive to those expressed in other *Indicators\** that may also deal with large blocks of *forest\**, such as Indicator 6.4.5 (caribou), or the requirements of *HCV\** Categories 2 and 3 (addressed in Principle 9) that address *landscape\*-level ecosystems\** and large remnant *ecosystem\** patches. In other words, if the maintenance of contiguous areas of *forest\** of natural-disturbance origin is addressed elsewhere, additional efforts should not be required to address the requirements of this *Indicator\**.

The *Indicator's\** requirement for maintenance of contiguous blocks of *forest\** that are of natural-disturbance origin should take *forest type\** and management history into account. Some *forest\** areas may have a long history of management involving frequent *stand\** entries and are generally not susceptible to large natural disturbances. In such cases, there should be moderated expectations of the extent to which this requirement can be addressed in *forests\** with a long history of management and limited natural disturbance.

6.8.5 In a manner consistent with the ecology of the *ecoregion\** and *forest types\** being managed, *management activities\** show consideration for maintenance and *restoration\** of *connectivity\** in the forest *landscape\**.

*Connectivity\** planning considers the natural mosaic of *forest types\** and disturbance patterns, as well as managing *roads\**, linear disturbances, culverts and other crossings of *wetlands\** and *water bodies\**, and other barriers that affect *connectivity\**.

6.8.6 Appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of operations, access management is being implemented for *roads\** developed for forest management that:

1. Addresses use management strategies (including *deactivation\** and/or *abandonment\** and maintenance) for all grades of *road\** under the management of *The Organization\** or in collaboration with other authorities;
2. Considers intactness in areas with sensitive biological values and where remoteness is a key tourism value;
3. Implements access development, use, and *road\** reclamation in contiguous blocks as identified in Indicator 6.8.4, while considering the needs of *species at risk\** and access-sensitive species;
4. Identifies and attempts to maintain a fair and equitable balance between the ecological value of intactness and social and economic values associated with maintenance of access; and
5. Is consistent with or exceeds requirements of approved government/land *management plans\**.

Where access and/or other linear disturbances are being constructed or used by other *tenure\** holders or other land users, *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\**

to address the components of this *Indicator\** and encourage others to address the components of the *Indicator\**.

#### INTENT BOX

This *Indicator\** requires use management strategies to address *deactivation\** and/or abandonment and maintenance for all grades of *roads\**. There may be circumstances in which neither *deactivation\** nor *abandonment\** is appropriate, such as when a *road\** has customary or *legal\** use by a community or is required by other resources users. In such cases, it would be *reasonable\** that the *management plan\** indicates the rationale and plans for ongoing use.

This *Indicator\** refers to *road\** reclamation in contiguous blocks, linking the requirements of this *Indicator\** to those of Indicators 6.8.3 and 6.8.4. Reclamation can be either passive, through restriction of access, including removal of water crossings, or active, through practices such as planting or otherwise facilitating regeneration on *road\** surfaces. Decisions regarding appropriate practices used should take into consideration the likely success of the practices in returning *roads\** to forested conditions as promptly as is practical.

Refer to Indicator 6.5.9 for consideration of *road\** building in *designated conservation lands\**.

6.8.7 *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\**, with managers, agencies and *Indigenous Peoples\** responsible for managing lands adjacent to the *forest\** to coordinate approaches to *landscape\*-level management*, including:

1. Management to facilitate *landscape\*-scale\* connectivity\**;
2. Management to minimize *cumulative disturbances\**; and
3. Maintenance and/or *restoration\** of large contiguous areas.

6.9 ***The Organization\* shall not convert natural forest\* to plantations\*, nor natural forests\* or plantations\* on sites directly converted from natural forest\* to non-forest land use, except when the conversion:***

- a. ***Affects a very limited portion\* of the area of the Management Unit\*, and***
- b. ***Will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure long-term\*conservation\* benefits in the Management Unit\*, and***
- c. ***Does not damage or threaten High Conservation Values\*, nor any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those High Conservation Values\*. (C6.10 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)***

#### INTENT BOX

Refer to the Glossary to understand how the word *plantation\** is used in this Standard.

This *Criterion\** applies to current and future or planned conversion. Past conversion is covered in Criterion 6.10.

If the *plantation\** site was a *natural forest\** immediately prior to being converted to a *plantation\**, then it may not be converted to non-forest uses. However, if the *plantation\** site was non-forest immediately prior to being converted to a *plantation\**, then it may be converted back to non-forest uses.

The construction of forest *roads\**, other essential *infrastructure\** for forest *management activities* and essential public utilities, such as powerlines, pipelines and railways, are not considered to be conversion processes.

In this *Criterion\**, *forest\** is also meant to be *natural forest\**, such as a wooded ecosystem\* or savannah, for example. As such, non-forest uses or non-forest land uses are not constrained by the meaning of *forest\** as simply a “tract of land dominated by trees.”

- 6.9.1 *The Organization\** shall neither convert *natural forest\** to *plantations\**, nor convert *natural forests\** to non-forest land use, nor convert *plantations\** on sites directly converted from *natural forest\** to non-forest land use, except when the conversion affects a *very limited portion\** of the *Management Unit\**. Where conversion is undertaken by *The Organization\**, the conversion:
1. Will produce clear, substantial, additional, secure, *long-term\* conservation\** benefits in the *Management Unit\**; and
  2. Does not damage or threaten *High Conservation Values\**, or any sites or resources necessary to maintain or enhance those *High Conservation Values\**.
- 6.10 *Management Units\** containing *plantations\** that were established on areas converted from *natural forest\** after November 1994 shall not qualify for certification, except where:**
- a. Clear and sufficient evidence is provided that *The Organization\** was not directly or indirectly responsible for the conversion, or**
  - b. The conversion affected a *very limited portion\** of the area of the *Management Unit\** and is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure *long-term\* conservation\** benefits in the *Management Unit\**. (C10.9 P&C V4)**
- 6.10.1 Based on *best available information\**, accurate data related to prior land use and *forest type\** present before and after conversion is compiled on all conversions from *natural forest\** since 1994.
- 6.10.2 Areas converted from *natural forest\** to *plantation\** since November 1994 are not certified, except where:
1. *The Organization\** provides clear and sufficient evidence that it was not directly or indirectly responsible for the conversion; or
  2. The conversion is producing clear, substantial, additional, secure, *long-term\* conservation\** benefits in the *Management Unit\**; and
  3. The total area of *plantation\** on sites converted from *natural forest\** since November 1994 is less than 5% of the total area of the *Management Unit\**.

## PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLANNING

**The Organization\* shall have a management plan\* consistent with its policies and objectives\* and proportionate to scale, intensity and risks\* of its management activities\*. The management plan\* shall be implemented and kept up-to-date based on monitoring information in order to promote adaptive management\*. The associated planning and procedural documentation shall be sufficient to guide staff, inform affected stakeholders\* and interested stakeholders\* and to justify management decisions. (P7 P&C V4)**

### INTENT BOX

*Management plan\** refers to the collection of documents, reports, records and maps that justify and regulate activities carried out on the *Management Unit\**. *Management plan\** documentation can build from existing planning processes, and is not solely confined to provincially regulated or required documents. Refer to the Glossary for the full definition of *management plan\**.

- 7.1 The Organization\* shall, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of its management activities\*, set policies (visions and values) and objectives\* for management, which are environmentally sound, socially beneficial and economically viable\*. Summaries of these policies and objectives\* shall be incorporated into the management plan\*, and publicized. (C7.1a P&C V4)**
- 7.1.1 Vision, values and strategic *objectives\** that support the *management plan\** are aligned with the requirements of this Standard.
- 7.1.2 Operational *management objectives\** that address the requirements of this Standard are described in the *management plan\**.

### INTENT BOX

For this *Criterion\**, values refer to the *long-term\** values of *The Organization\** regarding conformance with the FSC *Principles\** and *Criteria\**, at a minimum.

- 7.2 The Organization\* shall have and implement a management plan\* for the Management Unit\* which is fully consistent with the policies and management objectives\* as established according to Criterion 7.1. The management plan\* shall describe the natural resources that exist in the Management Unit\* and explain how the plan will meet the FSC certification requirements. The management plan\* shall cover forest management planning and social management planning proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of the planned activities. (C7.1 P&C V4)**
- 7.2.1 The *management plan\** includes management actions, procedures, strategies and other measures to achieve the *management objectives\**.
- 7.2.2 The *management plan\** includes the *legal\** provincial forest management planning requirements and addresses the following elements:
1. *Management objectives\**;
  2. Description of the forest resources to be managed, environmental limitations, land use and ownership status, socio-economic conditions and profile of adjacent lands;



3. Results of assessments and monitoring programs;
4. Planned *management activities\** and *silvicultural systems\** used, based on the ecology of the *forest\** and its social context;
5. Rationale for *timber harvesting levels\** and species selection;
6. Measures to prevent and mitigate negative impacts of *management activities\**;
7. Measures to conserve and/or *restore\** values identified throughout the other *Principles\** of the Standard;
8. Maps describing the forest resources, key *infrastructure\**, land use and management designations (including *HCVs\**), and planned *management activities\**.

**INTENT BOX**

The information required for adjacent lands primarily refers to shared values, resources, and services. It may not be possible in all circumstances to provide a profile of adjacent lands. The expectation is that information regarding adjacent lands will be provided only in cases where the information is *publicly available\**, such as within a *forest management plan\** on a neighbouring *Crown land\* Management Unit\**.

**7.3 The *management plan\** shall include *verifiable targets\** by which progress towards each of the prescribed *management objectives\** can be assessed. (New)**

7.3.1 *Verifiable targets\** and the frequency at which they are assessed, are established to ensure progress towards each *management objective\**, and are used as the basis for monitoring, as described in Principle 8. Targets are measurable (where possible), address short-term and *long-term\** time frames (as applicable), and each is supported by a rationale, including underlying assumptions.

**INTENT BOX**

Examples of *verifiable targets\**:

- The terms and conditions of the binding *FPIC\** agreement are met;
- Rutting does not exceed 5% of the *harvest area\** per year;
- *Road\** density target of 1.5 km primary and branch *road\** per square km is met;
- The *cumulative disturbance\** is less than 35% within the *caribou range\** portion of *Management Unit\**.

**7.4 The *Organization\** shall update and revise periodically the management planning and procedural documentation to incorporate the results of monitoring and evaluation, *stakeholder\* engagement\** or new scientific and technical information, as well as to respond to changing environmental, social and economic circumstances. (C7.2 P&C V4)**

7.4.1 The *management plan\** is revised and updated periodically to consider:

1. Monitoring and evaluation results, including results of audits;
2. *Stakeholder\* engagement\** results;
3. New scientific and technical information; and
4. Changing environmental, social, or economic circumstances.

**7.5 The *Organization\** shall make *publicly available\** a summary of the *management plan\** free of charge. Excluding *confidential information\**, other relevant components of the *management plan\** shall be made available to *affected stakeholders\** on request, and at cost of reproduction and handling. (C7.4 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Examples of *confidential information\** include data and content:

- Related to investment decisions;
- About *intellectual property\** rights;
- Which is client confidential;
- Which is, by law, confidential;
- Whose dissemination could put at *risk\** the *protection\** of wildlife species and *habitats\**;
- About sites that are of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to *Indigenous Peoples\** (see Criterion 3.5), as requested.

- 7.5.1 A summary of the *management plan\** in a format comprehensible to *stakeholders\**, including policies and *management objectives\** (defined in Criterion 7.1), maps and excluding *confidential information\**, is made *publicly available\** at no cost.

INTENT BOX

At the discretion of *The Organization\**, the entire *management plan\** can be provided, if this reduces the administrative burden.

- 7.5.2 Relevant components of the *management plan\**, excluding *confidential information\**, are provided upon request, at cost for production and handling.

- 7.6 *The Organization\** shall, proportionate to scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\*, proactively and transparently engage\* affected stakeholders\* in its management planning and monitoring processes, and shall engage\* interested stakeholders\* on request. (C4.4 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

*Culturally appropriate\* engagement\** is described in Annex F.

Refer to Annex E for details describing how *disputes\** are addressed throughout the Standard.

- 7.6.1 *Affected stakeholders\** are provided with an opportunity for *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** in planning processes and monitoring programs of *management activities\** in which they are affected.
- 7.6.2 Upon request, *interested stakeholders\** are provided with an opportunity for *engagement\** in planning processes and monitoring programs of *management activities\** that affect their interests.
- 7.6.3 A system is in place whereby *complaints\** can be made known to *The Organization\** related to impact of *forest management activities\** on *affected stakeholders\**, other than the ones concerned in Criterion 4.6.
- 7.6.4 A *publicly available\** dispute resolution process that can be adapted through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** is in place.
- 7.6.5 *Complaints\** are responded to in a *timely manner\**. *Complaints\** that are not resolved are elevated to *disputes\** and are being addressed via a dispute resolution process.
- 7.6.6 An up-to-date record of *complaints\** and *disputes\** is maintained, and includes:

1. Steps taken to resolve *complaints\** and *disputes\**;
2. Outcomes of all *complaints\** and dispute resolution processes, including, where applicable, *fair compensation\** for loss or damage to property; and
3. Unresolved *disputes\**, the reasons they are not resolved, and how they will be resolved.

## PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT

**The Organization\* shall demonstrate that, progress towards achieving the management objectives\*, the impacts of management activities\* and the condition of the Management Unit\*, are monitored and evaluated proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\*, in order to implement adaptive management\*. (P8 P&C V4)**

### INTENT BOX

The main objective\* of monitoring is to allow *The Organization\** to implement *adaptive management\**. This objective\* also determines the *intensity\**, frequency, scheme, schedules and procedures for monitoring. There is flexibility regarding all these factors, as long as the monitoring enables *adaptive management\**. Monitoring should be consistent and replicable over time, suitable for quantifying significant social, economic and environmental changes over time, and suitable for identifying *risks\** and unacceptable impacts.

The overall setup of the monitoring system also depends on the *scale, intensity and risk\** of *management activities\**. Some monitoring variables deal with issues with high levels of *risk\**. Examples include variables for which there is a high *risk\** of not achieving targets, or *management activities\** that could cause negative social, economic or environmental impacts. *Risk\** is also high when knowledge of the likelihood of negative impacts is weak. Such variables need to receive priority in monitoring systems.

- Criterion 8.1 addresses requirements to monitor the implementation of the *management plan\**.
- Criterion 8.2 addresses requirements to monitor and evaluate the significant environmental (8.2.1) and social and economic (8.2.2) impacts of *management activities\**, as well as changes in the environmental condition (8.2.3) of the *Management Unit\**.
- Criterion 8.3 deals with the analysis of the results of monitoring and evaluation for feedback into the periodic revision of the *management plan\**, as required by Criterion 7.4. The objective\* is to ensure lesson-learning and continuous improvement in the quality of management, consistent with the *adaptive management\** approach described in Principle 7. Monitoring results should be used in decision-making at an early stage in the planning process for the next *management plan\**.

In all provinces, some aspects of forest monitoring are the responsibility of the provincial government. Some of the monitoring responsibilities identified in this *Principle\** may be carried out by provincial governments through existing programs. It is not the intent of this *Principle\** that *The Organization\** should duplicate established regulatory monitoring practices. Even though the wording used to articulate the *Indicators\** in Criterion 8.2 is directed toward *The Organization\**, *The Organization\** may rely on other agencies where those agencies have responsibility for relevant monitoring. Furthermore, it is recognized that provincial governments and forest *stakeholders\** can influence or constrain *The Organization's\** ability to independently meet FSC monitoring requirements. It is intended that there is cooperation between agencies so that *The Organization\** can demonstrate progress in achieving *management plan\* objectives\** through sufficient forest monitoring.

Principle 7 requires forest management to adhere to the principles of *adaptive management\**. An important component of *adaptive management\** is the monitoring regime. The concept of *adaptive management\** is carried forward to this *Principle\** and

the monitoring should be designed to explicitly evaluate the effect of management on resources and values.

**8.1 The Organization\* shall monitor the implementation of its management plan\*, including its policies and management objectives\*, its progress with the activities planned, and the achievement of its verifiable targets\*. (New)**

8.1.1 A monitoring plan is documented and implemented in order to monitor the implementation of the *management plan\**, including its policies, *management objectives\** and achievement of *verifiable targets\**.

**8.2 The Organization\* shall monitor and evaluate the environmental and social impacts of the activities carried out in the Management Unit\*, and changes in its environmental condition. (C8.2 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

The monitoring program to evaluate environmental, social and economic impacts of *management activities\** and the changes in environmental condition should be designed in a way to focus on the identification of significant and adverse impacts, and consider the cost of implementing monitoring initiatives, as well as a *reasonable\** timeframe by which changes in conditions can be detected. The information used to fulfill the monitoring requirements can be obtained from various sources, including *The Organization\**.

8.2.1 Monitoring is sufficient to identify significant environmental impacts of *management activities\**, including (where applicable):

1. Poor regeneration (Criteria 10.1 and 10.5);
2. Invasiveness or other adverse impacts associated with *alien species\** (Criterion 10.3);
3. Adverse effects of *fertilizers\** (Criterion 10.6);
4. Adverse effects of *pesticides\** (Criterion 10.7);
5. Adverse effects of *biological control agents\** (Criterion 10.8);
6. Physical damage to soil, loss of soil nutrient and loss of *productive forest\** area (Criterion 6.3);
7. Adverse effects of increased access (Indicator 6.8.4);
8. Site level damage of harvesting and extraction on residual trees and on *environmental values\** (Criterion 10.11);
9. Damage caused by inappropriate storage or disposal of *waste materials\** (Criterion 10.12).

8.2.2. A system is in place to monitor the social and economic aspects of *management activities\**, including (where applicable):

1. Illegal or unauthorized activities identified by *The Organization\** (Criterion 1.4);
2. Resolution of *disputes\** (Criteria 1.6, 2.6, 4.6, 7.6);
3. Sexual harassment and gender discrimination (Criterion 2.2);
4. Occupational health and safety (Criterion 2.3);
5. Timely payment of wages *The Organization\** is responsible for or that is within *The Organization's\* sphere of influence\** (Criterion 2.4);
6. Health of *workers\** related to the exposure to *pesticides\** or *fertilizers\** (Criterion 2.5 and Indicator 10.7.7);
7. Full implementation of the terms in *binding agreements\** (Criterion 3.3);
8. *Protection\** of sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to *Indigenous Peoples\** and *local communities\** (Criteria 3.5 and 4.7);

9. Actual annual harvests compared to projected annual harvests of timber and *non-timber forest products\** (Criterion 5.2); and
  10. *Economic viability\** of *The Organization\** (as required by Indicator 5.5.1).
- 8.2.3 Systems are in place to obtain up-to-date monitoring information identifying significant changes in environmental conditions caused by *forest management activities\**, including (where applicable):
1. The maintenance and/or enhancement of *ecosystem services\** (Criterion 5.1) (when *The Organization\** makes FSC promotional claims regarding the provision of *ecosystem services\**, or receives payment for the provision of *ecosystem services\**);
  2. *Species at risk\** and the effectiveness of actions implemented to protect them and their habitats\* (Criterion 6.4);
  3. Naturally occurring *native species\** and *biological diversity\**, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to *conserve\** and/or *restore\** them (Criterion 6.6);
  4. *Water bodies\**, *riparian zones\**, water quality and flow in *watersheds\**, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to *conserve\** and/or *restore\** them (Criterion 6.7);
  5. *Forest types\**, age classes per *forest type\** and forest patch sizes, and the effectiveness of actions implemented to maintain and/or *restore\** these features (Criterion 6.8); and
  6. Conversion of *natural forest\** to *plantations\** or conversion to non-forest cover (Criterion 6.9).

**8.3 *The Organization\** shall analyze the results of monitoring and evaluation and feed the outcomes of this analysis back into the planning process. (C8.4 P&C V4)**

- 8.3.1 The results of monitoring are incorporated into relevant organizational procedures and/or the *management plan\** through periodic updates.
- 8.3.2 If monitoring results show inconsistencies with the FSC Standard, then *management objectives\**, *verifiable targets\** and/or *management activities\** are revised.

**8.4 *The Organization\** shall make publicly available\* a summary of the results of monitoring free of charge, excluding confidential information\*. (C8.5 P&C V4)**

- 8.4.1 Monitoring results covered in Indicators 8.2.1, 8.2.2 and 8.2.3 are made *publicly available\** at no cost in a format comprehensible to *stakeholders\** and excluding *confidential information\**.

INTENT BOX

At the discretion of *The Organization\**, the entire results, or a summary, of monitoring can be provided if this reduces the administrative burden.

**8.5 *The Organization\** shall have and implement a tracking and tracing system proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of its management activities\*, for demonstrating the source and volume in proportion to projected output for each year, of all products from the Management Unit\* that are marketed as FSC certified. (C8.3 P&C V4)**

INTENT BOX

Forest products must be covered by a valid Chain-of-Custody (CoC) or joint Forest Management/ Chain-of-Custody (FM/CoC) certificate to be considered FSC-certified or to

carry the FSC logo. The tracking and tracing system referred to in this *Criterion\** is the basis for assessing whether products leaving the *Management Unit\** meet CoC requirements, and can be passed on to the purchaser as FSC-certified material. Therefore, this *Criterion\** only applies to situations where the intent is that the products from the *Management Unit\** are sold or marketed as FSC-certified.

The *Criterion\** requires the demonstration of the source and volume of all products leaving the *Management Unit\** to ensure that any FSC-certified material claimed by the purchaser can be verified as originating from a valid FSC-certified *Management Unit\**. This is needed as one of the checks against 'greenwashing' of uncertified products entering the certified supply chain.

- 8.5.1 A system is implemented to track and trace all products transported from the *Management Unit\** that are marketed as FSC-certified.
- 8.5.2 Information about all timber products that leave the *Management Unit\**, and information about all *non-timber forest products\** sold or delivered by *The Organization\** is compiled and documented, including:
1. Species name;
  2. Product name or description;
  3. Volume (or quantity) of product;
  4. Information to trace the material to the point of origin;
  5. Logging date, reference date or period;
  6. If basic transformation activities take place in the *forest\**, the date and volume produced; and
  7. Whether the material was sold or delivered as FSC-certified.

#### INTENT BOX

For this *Indicator\**, the reference date or period refers to the timeframe by which the timber product was harvested, hauled outside the forest gate, or delivered to the purchaser.

Basic transformation activities do not include tree de-limbing, topping or chipping.

The "forest gate" is considered to be the point of entry to, or exit from, the *forest\** and is defined in the chain of custody documentation or in the *forest management plan\**.

- 8.5.3 Sales invoices and transport documents are kept for a minimum of five years for all FSC-certified products sold or delivered by *The Organization\**.
- A. Sales invoices identify, at a minimum, the following information:
1. Name and address of purchaser;
  2. The date of sale;
  3. Species name;
  4. Product description;
  5. The volume (or quantity) sold;
  6. Certificate code; and
  7. The FSC Claim "FSC 100%" identifying products sold as FSC-certified.
- B. Where sales invoices are not issued, transport documents and/or other documentation related to certified products track, at a minimum, the following information:
1. Identification of the destination;
  2. The date of transport or delivery;

3. Species name or group;
4. Product description;
5. The volume (or quantity) delivered;
6. Load or batch reference number; and
7. Proof the certified product comes from a FSC-certified *forest*\*.

INTENT BOX

On *Crown land*\*, wood products harvested are often not sold, but rather, ownership is transferred from the licensee to the purchaser at the forest gate. In this case, 8.5.3.A is not applicable.



## PRINCIPLE 9: HIGH CONSERVATION VALUES\*

**The Organization\* shall maintain and/or enhance the High Conservation Values\* in the Management Unit\* through applying the precautionary approach\*. (P9 P&C V4)**

### INTENT BOX

Refer to Annex D: HCV\* Framework for direction on appropriate interpretation and implementation of HCV\* categories.

#### **Common Guidance**

HCV\* assessors, resource managers\* and auditors should refer to the [Common Guidance for the Management and Monitoring of High Conservation Values](#) (Brown and Senior 2014) or relevant reference material provided by FSC for advice regarding implementation of the Indicators\* addressed in this Principle\*.

#### **HCVs\* and HCV Areas\***

Many Indicators\* in this Principle\* refer to both HCVs\* and HCV areas\*. There is overlap in the terms, but the distinction between them is important. HCVs\* are the values themselves as they are identified below; HCV areas\* are the physical areas that are needed for the existence of identified HCVs\*. For example, an endangered bog-dwelling orchid may be a HCV\*, but the bog in which the orchid exists is a HCV area\*.

#### **Best Available Information\* and Principle 3**

As with other Principles\* in this Standard, several Indicators\* in Principle 9 require that best available information\* be used to provide a baseline for management activities\* or as a basis for analyses in subsequent Indicators\*. The Organization\* is expected to implement these requirements in consideration of a FPIC\* process, as described in Principle 3 that is inclusive of information sharing related to legal\* and customary rights\* as well as site, stand\*, and landscape values\* of economic, social, and cultural significance to Indigenous Peoples\*.

The definition of best available information\* provides general direction on the type of information to be gathered and the extent of effort required to gather the information. To place appropriate limits on what should be involved in gathering best available information\*, the definition notes that it should be constrained by reasonable\* effort and cost. The intent of the term reasonable\* is to emphasize that limits, such as cost and practicality, exist on the expectations of the effort required to gather information.

#### **Engagement\* with Indigenous Peoples\***

As with other Principles\* in the Standard, several Indicators\* in Principle 9 require engagement\* with Indigenous Peoples\*. The Organization\* is expected to implement these obligations in a manner consistent with the specific requirements of Indicator 3.1.2.

#### **Maps**

Where maps or mapped information is required by this Principle\*, evidence of digital files, instead of hard-copy maps, is sufficient.

- 9.1 The Organization\*, through engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested stakeholders\* and other means and sources, shall assess and record the presence, status and likelihood of occurrence of the following High Conservation Values\* in the Management Unit\*, proportionate to the scale, intensity, and risk\* of impacts of management activities\*:**

**HCV 1 – Species diversity.** Concentrations of *biological diversity\** including *endemic\** species, and *rare\**, *threatened\** or endangered species that are *significant\** at global, national or regional levels.

**HCV 2 – Landscape\*-level ecosystems\*** and mosaics. *Intact Forest Landscapes\** and large *landscape\*-level ecosystems\** and *ecosystem\** mosaics that are *significant\** at global, national or regional levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

**HCV 3 – Ecosystems\* and habitats\*.** *Rare\**, *threatened\**, or endangered *ecosystems\**, *habitats\** or *refugia\**.

**HCV 4 – Critical\*ecosystem services\*.** Basic *ecosystem services\** in *critical\** situations, including *protection\** of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

**HCV 5 – Community needs.** Sites and resources fundamental to satisfying the necessities of *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\** (for livelihood, health, nutrition, water, etc.), identified through *engagement\** with these communities or *Indigenous Peoples\**.

**HCV 6 – Cultural values.** Sites, resources, *habitats\** and *landscapes\** of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of *critical\** cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**, identified through *engagement\** with these *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**. (C9.1 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)

#### INTENT BOX

##### **What is a HCV Assessment\*?**

This *Criterion\** requires the preparation of a *HCV assessment\**. A *HCV assessment\** is a documented description of *HCVs\** that clearly reports on the presence of values, their location (if not confidential), status, and as much as possible, should provide information on *habitat\** and other key resources that support the values. The assessment is a framework document that is to be used to develop management and monitoring strategies to maintain and/or enhance the values.

##### **The HCV Assessment\*:**

- Addresses all six *HCV\** categories;
- Uses *best available information\** on the status and other attributes of the *HCVs\**;
- Describes the current condition of the *HCVs\** and whether they are declining, stable or increasing; and
- Uses results from *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\**, *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** with an interest in the *conservation\** and management of *HCVs\**.

- 9.1.1 A *HCV assessment\** is completed using *best available information\** of the status of *HCV\** Categories 1-6 as defined in Criterion 9.1, the *HCV areas\** they rely on, and their condition.

The assessment is completed using the National Framework (Annex D) or another framework that meets the same intent and addresses all *HCV\** categories and values identified in the National Framework.

INTENT BOX

Descriptions of the condition and state of *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\** identified in the *HCV assessment\** report should facilitate monitoring of the results of management efforts. To implement useful effectiveness monitoring, the initial state of the *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\** should be well-articulated and quantitatively defined, where possible.

- 9.1.2 The *HCV assessment\** uses results associated with the identification of *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\** from *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\**, and *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** with an interest in the *conservation\** and management of *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\**. The assessment also uses input from qualified (technical and/or scientific) *specialists\**.

INTENT BOX

The expectation of this *Indicator\** is that *engagement\** with *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** addresses all *HCV\*-related* topics, for which there is an interest in contributing.

For this *Indicator\**, qualified technical and scientific *specialists\** include individuals with expertise in the topics being addressed, regardless of who they are employed by.

- 9.1.3 All *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\**, except those considered sensitive for ecological or cultural reasons, which are definable based on location are delineated on maps consistent with the *scale\** of the designation (e.g., global, national, regional, large home range, isolated occurrence, etc.).
- 9.1.4 Information regarding the location and identity of sensitive sites is held in confidence.

INTENT BOX

Sensitive sites referred to in this *Indicator\** are *HCVs\** that are especially vulnerable to human presence. These sites may include cultural values of spiritual or historic importance and ecological values that are sensitive to damage or disruption.

- 9.1.5 A review by one or more *qualified specialists\** is completed. Input from the review is addressed in the *HCV assessment\**.

INTENT BOX

For this *Indicator\**, *qualified specialists\** includes individuals who were not involved in the development of the *HCV assessment\** report. The area of expertise of the *qualified specialist(s)\** should be appropriate for the content of the *HCV assessment\**. For example, it may be necessary for the document to be reviewed by an ecologist and a social scientist, depending on the extent to which these topics feature prominently in the *HCV assessment\**. On the other hand, a single reviewer may be sufficient if the person has broad experience in FSC's approach to *HCVs\**.

- 9.1.6 The *HCV assessment\** report is updated every five years. Portions of the assessment are updated more frequently in response to changes in the status of *species at risk\** or when there are significant changes in the state of other *HCVs\** or *HCV areas\**.

INTENT BOX

When significant changes to the *HCV assessment\** report are implemented or when the report is updated after five years, the expectation is that the update process includes

*engagement\* with stakeholders\* and culturally appropriate\* engagement\* with Indigenous Peoples\*.*

Examples of significant changes include: recognition of ecosystems\* that have declined markedly in abundance (HCV 3), change in the recognition that the forest\* plays in meeting the needs of local communities\* (HCV 5), or when the boundaries of the certified forest\* are expanded to encompass additional area. Incorporating revisions in the status of species at risk\* is not considered a significant change.

- 9.1.7 If significant changes have been made to the *HCV assessment\** as a result of implementation of Indicator 9.1.6, a review of the updated assessment report is completed by one or more *qualified specialists\**.
- 9.1.8 The *HCV assessment\** report and review are made *publicly available\**, including in electronic format.
- 9.2 *The Organization\* shall develop effective strategies that maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation Values\*, through engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested stakeholders\* and experts\*. (C9.2 P&C V4)***
- 9.2.1 *Threats\* to HCVs\* are identified using best available information\*.*
- 9.2.2 Management strategies and actions that use a *precautionary approach\** are developed and are effective to maintain and/or enhance *HCVs\** and to maintain associated *HCV areas\** prior to implementing *management activities\**.
- 9.2.3 *Indigenous Peoples\*, affected\* and interested stakeholders\*, and qualified specialists\* and/or experts\* are engaged\* in the development of management strategies and actions to maintain and/or enhance the identified HCVs\* and HCV areas\*.*
- 9.2.4 Management strategies are reviewed and updated in conjunction with updates to the *HCV assessment\** report, as described in Indicators 9.1.6 and 9.1.7.
- 9.3 *The Organization\* shall implement strategies and actions that maintain and/or enhance the identified High Conservation Values\*. These strategies and actions shall implement the precautionary approach\* and be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\*. (C9.3 P&C V4)***
- 9.3.1 The *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\** on which they depend are maintained and/or enhanced, including by implementing the strategies developed through the *Indicators\** in Criterion 9.2.
- 9.3.2 Implementation of the strategies developed in Criterion 9.2 prevent damage and avoid risks to *HCVs\**, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of *HCVs\** are uncertain.
- 9.3.3 Activities that are inconsistent with strategies developed in Criterion 9.2 cease immediately and actions are taken to *restore\** and *protect\** the *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\**.
- 9.3.4 The *Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\** to facilitate implementation of activities required to maintain and/or enhance *HCVs\** and *HCV areas\**.

Where a specific *HCV\** or *HCV area\** abuts or straddles a *Management Unit\** boundary, or is potentially affected by activities outside of the *Management Unit\**, *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\** to coordinate activities with managers and users of adjacent lands to maintain and/or enhance the *HCVs\** or *HCV areas\**.

**9.4 The Organization\* shall demonstrate that periodic monitoring is carried out to assess changes in the status of High Conservation Values\*, and shall adapt its management strategies to ensure their effective protection\*. The monitoring shall be proportionate to the scale, intensity and risk\* of management activities\*, and shall include engagement\* with affected stakeholders\*, interested stakeholders\* and experts\*. (C9.4 P&C V4)**

9.4.1 A program of periodic monitoring assesses:

1. Implementation of management strategies;
2. The status of *HCVs\** including the *HCV areas\** on which they depend; and
3. The effectiveness of management strategies and actions for the protection of *HCVs\**, to fully maintain and/or enhance the *HCVs\**.

9.4.2 The monitoring program includes *engagement\** with *affected\** and *interested stakeholders\**, *Indigenous Peoples\**, and *experts\** and/or *qualified specialists\**.

**INTENT BOX**

*Affected\** and *interested stakeholders\**, *Indigenous Peoples\**, and *experts\** and/or *qualified specialists\** should be involved or consulted in the design of the monitoring program. The extent to which they play a role in implementation of monitoring will depend on the technical expertise needed, their interest, abilities, and capacity required to participate, and the confidentiality of the information being collected. The role of the potential participants in monitoring should be determined based on discussions between the parties and *The Organization\**.

9.4.3 The monitoring program has sufficient scope, detail and frequency to detect changes in *HCVs\**, relative to the initial assessment and status identified for each *HCV\**.

**INTENT BOX**

Monitoring can have significant costs. It is *reasonable\** that *The Organizations\** look for efficiencies in its efforts to design practical monitoring programs.

Monitoring periodicity should be based on:

1. The period over which there may be a *reasonable\** expectation of change in the status of *HCVs\**.
2. The period over which it is possible to detect the effects of management strategies and actions; and
3. The *risk\** and *intensity\** of the forestry operations.

9.4.4 Management strategies and actions are adapted when monitoring or other new information shows that these strategies and actions are ineffective at addressing the maintenance and/or enhancement of *HCVs\**.

9.4.5 Monitoring needs are reviewed in conjunction with updates to the *HCV assessment\** report as described in Indicators 9.1.6 and 9.1.7 and the updates to the management strategies as described in Indicator 9.2.4.

## PRINCIPLE 10: IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES\*

**Management activities\*** conducted by or for *The Organization\** for the *Management Unit\** shall be selected and implemented consistent with *The Organization's* economic, environmental and social policies and *objectives\** and in compliance with the *Principles\** and *Criteria\** collectively. (New)

- 10.1 After harvest or in accordance with the *management plan\**, *The Organization\** shall, by natural or artificial regeneration methods, regenerate vegetation cover in a timely fashion to pre-harvesting or more *natural conditions\**. (New)

### INTENT BOX

The period required for regeneration is typically shorter for areas to be planted or seeded (artificial regeneration) than areas selected for natural regeneration. This *Criterion\** does not give preference to planting as a way to shorten the period for regeneration, because in certain cases, natural regeneration approaches are more suitable.

Regeneration is expected to be achieved for each *stand\** but the composition and structure *objectives\** may be achieved at the block or the *landscape\** level.

- 10.1.1 Harvested sites are regenerated in a *timely manner\** to maintain *environmental values\**.
- 10.1.2 Regeneration activities are implemented in a manner that:
1. Is suitable to recover or improve overall *pre-harvest\** or *natural forest\** composition and structure; or
  2. According to the *best available information\**, promote or enhance the *resilience\** of the future *stand\** while considering climate change.
- 10.2 ***The Organization\** shall use species for regeneration that are ecologically well-adapted to the site and to the management objectives\*. The Organization\* shall use native species\* and local genotypes\* for regeneration, unless there is clear and convincing justification for using others. (C10.4 C4).**
- 10.2.1 Species chosen for regeneration are ecologically well-adapted to the site, are *native species\** and are of local provenance, unless clear and convincing justification is provided for using non-local *genotypes\** or non-*native species\**.
- 10.2.2 Species chosen for regeneration are consistent with the regeneration *objectives\**.
- 10.3 ***The Organization\** shall only use alien species\* when knowledge and/or experience have shown that any invasive impacts can be controlled and effective mitigation measures are in place. (C6.9 and C10.8 V4)**
- 10.3.1 An *alien species\** is used only when direct experience or the results of scientific research demonstrate that the species is not invasive.
- 10.3.2 A plan to prevent the spread of *invasive species\** introduced by *The Organization\** is developed and implemented in a *timely manner\**.

Where *The Organization\**, as a *tenure\** holder, does not have authority over the control of *invasive species\** on the *Management Unit\**, *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\** to prevent the spread of *invasive species\**.

INTENT BOX

The introduction of *invasive species\** is not permitted as per Indicator 10.3.1. Rather, Indicator 10.3.2 applies to *invasive species\** introduced by *The Organization\** inadvertently or prior to certification.

10.3.3 *Management activities\** are implemented in cooperation with regulatory bodies and/or *experts\** where these exist, with the aim to minimize or control the most significant negative impacts of *invasive\* alien species\** that were not introduced by *The Organization\** but that are within the scope of *The Organization's\* management activities\**.

**10.4 *The Organization\** shall not use *genetically modified organisms\** in the *Management Unit\**. (C6.8 V4)**

10.4.1 *Genetically modified organisms\** (GMOs) are not used.

**10.5 *The Organization\** shall use silvicultural practices that are ecologically appropriate for the vegetation, species, sites and management objectives\*. (New)**

10.5.1 Silvicultural practices are implemented that are ecologically appropriate for the site and its associated fauna and flora, as well as for *management objectives\**.

INTENT BOX

This *Indicator\** is complementary to Indicators 10.1.1 and 10.1.2 as it applies to all silvicultural practices, such as site preparation, spacing, cleaning and pruning.

Ecologically-appropriate silvicultural practices for the site means that the site will have the future capacity to support the native plant and animal species that existed pre-harvest. Ecosystem-based management and a mix of "coarse filter" and "fine filter" approaches can be used to meet this requirement.

In this *Indicator\**, "ecologically appropriate" means that *silviculture\** practices should be performed to meet not only the *management objectives\** but also the requirements of Indicator 6.8.1 (if different).

**10.6. *The Organization\** shall minimize or avoid the use of *fertilizers\**. When *fertilizers\** are used, *The Organization\** shall demonstrate that use is equally, or more ecologically and economically beneficial, than use of *silvicultural systems\** that do not require *fertilizers\**, and prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to *environmental values\**, including soils. (C10.7 P&C V4 and Motion 2014#7)**

INTENT BOX

These *Indicators\** apply to *fertilizer\** application directly on the *Forest Management Unit\**. *Fertilizer\** used in the growing of nursery stock, including remaining residues found on or around the plant, or *fertilizer\** added to the growing medium (e.g. commercial peat pellets), are not the focus of these *Indicators\**.

10.6.1 The use of *fertilizers\** is minimized or avoided.

10.6.2 When *fertilizers\** are used:

1. Measures are employed to avoid contamination of surface and ground water, protect non-timber forest values and maintain *long-term\** soil health, such as soil organic matter, pH balance, and so on;
2. Buffer zones are used to protect rare plant communities, *riparian zones\**, *watercourses\** and *water bodies\**;
3. Their types, application rates and frequencies, and sites of application are documented;
4. Damage to *environmental values\** resulting from *fertilizer\** use is mitigated or repaired; and
5. The ecological and economic benefits of using them are equal to or higher than the benefits of *silvicultural systems\** that do not require *fertilizers\**.

**10.7 The Organization\* shall use integrated pest management and silviculture\* systems which avoid, or aim at eliminating, the use of chemical pesticides\*. The Organization\* shall not use any chemical pesticides\* prohibited by FSC policy. When pesticides\* are used, The Organization\* shall prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to environmental values\* and human health. (C6. and C10.7 V4)**

INTENT BOX

The FSC Guide to Integrated Pest, Disease and Weed Management in FSC Certified Forests and Plantations (2009) is an optional generic framework that can assist managers in demonstrating that they have a strategy for reducing, minimizing or eliminating the impacts of *pesticide\** use. It can also assist managers in preventing and minimizing impacts from pests, diseases, fire and invasive plant introductions with prevention and alternative control methods rather than the use of chemical *pesticides\**.

**The Use of Herbicides in Canada**

Vegetation management is crucial to meeting *management objectives\**. In certain circumstances, the use of chemical *pesticides\** may be an acceptable practice. When chemical *pesticides\** are used, a rationale needs to be provided, as described in Indicator 10.7.2. *Pesticides\** are potentially acceptable when used for:

1. Controlling composition: The use of herbicides could increase artificially regenerated *stands\** reaching free-to-grow status. (OMNR, 1986; OMNR, 1988; Armson et al., 2001).
2. Controlling *alien\* invasive species\**: The control of *alien\* invasive species\** may include an integrated pest management (IPM) approach involving chemical treatments. (Wikeem & Miller, 2006).
3. Increasing forest yield: While the use of intensive mechanical release combined with early reforestation of tall planting stock may be an asset in the implementation of ecosystem-based management, it could also pose problems where the *objective\** is to maximize wood production (Thiffault & Roy, 2011). Herbicides in some cases have positive impacts on coniferous growth (Thiffault et al., 2003; Comeau, 2014; Homagain et al., 2011).

The use of herbicide spraying on public forests has been, and continues to be, contentious across Canada (Wagner 1994; Buse et al., 1995; Wagner et al.; 1998; Thompson et al., 2012). Many communities, including *Indigenous Peoples\**, have expressed concern about the application of glyphosate-based herbicides (Kayahara and Armstrong, 2015), particularly its potential impacts on non-timber forest values such as the harvest of wildlife, fish and edible wild plants. It is important to consider these concerns when developing a vegetation management strategy. This aspect should be kept in mind and addressed through Criterion



4.5 that identify, avoid and mitigate impacts of *management activities\** on *local communities\** and through Criteria 7.5 and 7.6, which require the *management plan\** to be made available to the public and requires *complaints\** related to *management activities\** to be addressed. Furthermore, human and *environmental values\** and health are also addressed in Indicators 10.7.6 and 10.7.7.

- 10.7.1 Integrated pest management, including selection of *silvicultural systems\**, is used to avoid or reduce the frequency, extent and amount of chemical *pesticide\** applications, and result in non-use or overall reduction in applications.
- 10.7.2 When chemical *pesticides\** are used, a rationale for using them is developed and includes:
1. A description of all circumstances where *pesticides\** are being considered;
  2. The identification and documentation (using *best available information\**) of potentially effective non-*pesticide\** methods of control, including their impacts on various factors such as tree growth, forest composition, *worker's\** health and safety, and *habitats\** for *species at risk\**;
  3. A clear preference for non-*pesticide\** control methods when their effects meet *management objectives\** and they are not cost prohibitive;
  4. Objective evidence demonstrating that the *pesticide\** is the only effective, practical and cost-effective way to control the pest; and
  5. If *pesticides\** are used, and two or more *pesticides\** are equally effective, the lesser hazardous *pesticide\** is used.
- 10.7.3 Chemical *pesticides\** prohibited by FSC's Pesticide Policy are not used or stored by *The Organization\** in the *Management Unit\** unless FSC has granted a derogation. *The Organization\** works within its *sphere of influence\** to minimize the use and storage by other parties in the *Management Unit\** of prohibited chemical *pesticides\**.
- 10.7.4 Records of *pesticide\** usage including trade name, active ingredient, quantity of active ingredient used, date of use, location of use, and reason for use are maintained.

INTENT BOX

It is advisable to maintain records for 10 years or more to be able to track the management usage and history, and to demonstrate the reduction of the quantity of pesticides through time. In addition, ten years should be a sufficient length of time for products used in Canada to track the toxicity levels of pesticides that remain in the environment over long periods of time.

*The Organization\** is expected to maintain records, but it is acknowledged that while not desirable, it may be possible that some records are lost if ownership changes.

- 10.7.5 The use of *pesticides\** complies with all *legal\** requirements of Annex A related to the transport, storage, handling, application and emergency procedures for cleanup following accidental spillages of dangerous products.

INTENT BOX

In this Standard, the ILO requirements of the document "Safety in the Use of Chemicals at Work" regarding transport, storage, handling, application and emergency procedures for cleanup following accidental spillages are included in Canadian legislation. Refer to Annex A, sections 3.3, 3.4 and 3.5 of the tables.

- 10.7.6 When *pesticides\** are used:
1. Measures are employed to avoid contamination of surface and ground water;
  2. The selected *pesticide\**, application method, timing and pattern of use offers the least *risk\** to humans and *environmental values\**; and
  3. While achieving effective results, quantities of *pesticide\** used are minimized.
- 10.7.7 Damage to *environmental values\** from *pesticide\** use is prevented and mitigated or repaired. Impacts on human health are avoided.

**10.8 The Organization\* shall minimize, monitor and strictly control the use of biological control agents\* in accordance with internationally accepted scientific protocols\*. When biological control agents\* are used, The Organization\* shall prevent, mitigate, and/or repair damage to environmental values\*. (C6.8 V4)**

- 10.8.1 The use of *biological control agents\** by *The Organization\** is minimized, monitored and controlled in compliance with *internationally accepted scientific protocols\**. *Biological control agents\** are used only where alternative pest control methods are:
1. Not available; or
  2. Ineffective in achieving *silvicultural objectives\**; or
  3. Prohibitively expensive, considering environmental and social costs, *risks\** and benefits.

**INTENT BOX**

In this Standard, *internationally accepted scientific protocols\** refers to the FAO Code of Conduct for the Import and Release of Exotic Biological Control Agents that has been adopted as International Standards for Phytosanitary Measures (ISPM) under the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC). The Code sets out internationally-agreed procedures for agents capable of self-replication for research, for field release for biological control, or for use as biological pesticides. The Code is addressed to entities, to be followed where national legislation does not exist or is inadequate. In Canada, the Canadian Food Inspection Agency (CFIA) is Canada's representative to the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC). Canada is a contracting party to the IPPC and ensures the compliance with the Convention.

- 10.8.2 Rationale for the use of *biological control agents\** is documented and based on peer-reviewed scientific evidence.
- 10.8.3 *The Organization\** will work within its *sphere of influence\** to minimize the use of *biological control agents\** by other parties in the *Management Unit\**.
- 10.8.4 The use of *biological control agents\** by *The Organization\** is recorded including type, quantity used, period of use, location of use and reason for use.
- 10.8.5 Damage to *environmental values\** caused by the use of *biological control agents\** is prevented and mitigated or repaired within *The Organization's\* sphere of influence\** and through cooperation with other parties.
- 10.9 The Organization\* shall assess risks\* and implement activities that reduce potential negative impacts from natural hazards\* proportionate to scale, intensity, and risk\*. (New)**

#### INTENT BOX

Examples of *natural hazards\** may include droughts, floods, fires, landslides, storms, insects or diseases outbreaks and avalanche.

Recognizing that *natural hazards\** also include natural disturbances, such as wind and fire, mitigating *risk\** means also managing for *resilience\** as opposed to attempting to control or prevent *natural hazards\**.

There are two examples on how damage from *natural hazards\** may be reduced: 1) a reduction of the frequency, *intensity\**, distribution or severity of *natural hazards\**; and 2) the mitigation of their impacts, for example, by salvaging timber.

- 10.9.1 Frequent and/or severe *natural hazards\** that occur regionally are identified using the *best available information\**.
- 10.9.2 Potential significant negative impacts of *natural hazards\** on *infrastructure\**, forest resources, *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** in the *Management Unit\** are documented or assessed.
- 10.9.3 *Management activities\** that can cause an increase in frequency, distribution or severity of *natural hazards\** are identified for those hazards that may be influenced by management.
- 10.9.4 *Management activities\** are modified and/or measures are developed and implemented that reduce the identified *risks\**.

#### INTENT BOX

*The Organization\**, as a *tenure\** holder, may have limited control over some *management activities\**, for example, fire suppression. If they cannot modify the activity or if they cannot develop measures to limit the identified *risk\**, it would be reasonable for *The Organization\** to work within its *sphere of influence\** to reduce or limit the *risk\**.

- 10.10 *The Organization\** shall manage infrastructural development, transport activities and silviculture\* so that water resources and soils are protected, and disturbance of and damage to rare\* and threatened species\*, habitats\*, ecosystems\* and landscape values\* are prevented, mitigated and/or repaired. (C6.5 V4)**

#### NOTE

The requirements to protect *environmental values\** are covered in Principle 6 and include specific measures related to development, maintenance and use of *infrastructure\** and *silviculture\**. If a certificate holder is in conformance with the *Indicators\** listed below, they will have met the requirements of Criterion 10.10:

- Water resources: Indicators 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.7.1 to 6.7.6.
- Soils: Indicators 6.3.1 to 6.3.7.
- *Species at risk\**: 6.4.2 to 6.4.6.
- Rare and threatened habitats & ecosystems values: 6.6.3 and 6.6.4.
- Rare and threatened landscape values: 6.8.1 to 6.8.6.

- 10.11 *The Organization\** shall manage activities associated with harvesting and extraction of timber and non-timber forest products\* so that environmental values\* are conserved,**

**merchantable\* waste is reduced, and damage to other products and services is avoided. (C5.3 and C6.5 V4)**

NOTE

Certificate holders will meet the requirements of Criterion 10.11 if they conform with the three *Indicators\** below, as well as Indicators 6.3.1 to 6.3.7 and Indicators 6.6.1. and 6.6.2.

- 10.11.1 Harvesting practices optimize the use of *merchantable\** timber, unless left on-site to provide structural diversity and wildlife *habitat\**, or for silvicultural or cultural reasons.

INTENT BOX

The harvesting of *merchantable\** but non-*marketable\** trees should be minimized.

- 10.11.2 Harvesting and silvicultural operations are conducted in such a way as to avoid or minimize damage to residual trees (crown, trunk and root), including non-*merchantable\*/non-marketable\** trees and trees being left for future harvest.
- 10.11.3 Selection cutting shall maintain or improve *stand\** quality while ensuring that native tree species are maintained at an ecologically appropriate *scale\**, unless an alternative yet sound rationale is provided.

**10.12 *The Organization\** shall dispose of waste materials\* in an environmentally appropriate manner. (C6.7 V4)**

- 10.12.1 Operational procedures related to handling of chemicals, liquid and solid non-organic *wastes materials\**, including fuel, oil, batteries and containers are in place and are implemented. At a minimum, the procedures address:
1. Collection, storage, and disposal of waste in an environmentally appropriate manner;
  2. Adherence to a waste recycling program, where it exists;
  3. Measures to prevent spills;
  4. Emergency plans for cleanup and treatment of injuries following spills or other accidents;
  5. Refueling constraints, including buffers around *riparian zones\** and *water bodies\**;
  6. Removal of used materials, including machinery and equipment; and
  7. Securing abandoned buildings owned by *The Organization\** on the *Management Unit\**.

## **Annex A: Minimum list of *applicable laws\**, regulations and nationally *ratified\** international treaties, conventions and agreements**

A minimum list of *applicable laws\**, regulations and nationally *ratified\** international treaties, conventions and agreements is provided to facilitate the use of this Standard, with special relevance for FSC Principle 1 and Principle 2. Because of its size, this list is available in a separate Companion Document to Annex A that can be accessed from the FSC Canada website at: <https://ca.fsc.org/en-ca> and look for “Annex A Companion Document”.

The status of the laws, regulations and nationally *ratified\** international treaties, conventions and agreements listed in the Annex A Companion Document are up-to-date at the time of publication of FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada, but are subject to change. An update of the Companion Document will be made available periodically. Efforts were made to identify the key treaties, laws and regulations that apply to forest management in Canada, however, the list provided should not be assumed to be exhaustive. *The Organization\** is required to comply with all *applicable laws\** and regulations, whether or not they are listed in the Companion Document.

## Annex B: Training Requirements for Workers\*

Workers\* have job-specific training related to their area(s) of responsibility that safely and effectively contribute to the implementation of the *management plan\** and all *management activities\**. Where relevant, workers\* can:

1. Implement forest activities to comply with applicable *legal\** requirements (Criterion 1.5);
2. Understand the content, meaning and applicability of the eight ILO Core Labour Conventions (Criterion 2.1);
3. Recognize and report on instances of sexual harassment and gender discrimination (Criterion 2.2);
4. Safely handle and dispose of hazardous substances to ensure that use does not pose health *risks\** (Criterion 2.3);
5. Carry out their responsibilities for particularly dangerous jobs or jobs entailing a special responsibility (Criterion 2.5);
6. Exercise their right to refuse work that is believed to be unsafe to the individual or another worker\*;
7. Identify where *Indigenous Peoples\** have *legal\** and *customary rights\** related to *management activities\** (Criterion 3.2);
8. Identify and implement applicable elements of UNDRIP and ILO Convention 169 (Criterion 3.4);
9. Identify sites of special cultural, ecological, economic, religious or spiritual significance to *Indigenous Peoples\** and implement the necessary measures to protect them before the start of *forest management activities\** to avoid negative impacts (Criterion 3.5 and Criterion 4.7);
10. Identify where *local communities\** have *legal\** rights related to *management activities\** (Criterion 4.1);
11. Carry out social, economic and *environmental impact assessments\** and develop appropriate mitigation measures (Criterion 4.5);
12. Implement activities related to the maintenance and/or enhancement of declared *ecosystem services\** (Criterion 5.1);
13. Handle, apply and store *pesticides\** (Criterion 10.7); and
14. Implement procedures for cleaning up spills of *waste materials\** (Criterion 10.12).

## **Annex C: Worker's\* Health & Safety Program**

A worker's\* Health & Safety Program includes:

1. A comprehensive safety policy;
2. Identification of danger, and measures to control or to minimize the danger;
3. Identification of safety training needs and the provision of safety training;
4. The provision of appropriate safety equipment for workers\* and woodlands staff based on assigned tasks (e.g., hardhats, eye protection, gloves, hearing protection, suitable footwear, etc.);
5. Regular monitoring of the condition and functionality of safety features on equipment;
6. A sufficient ratio of workers\* trained in first aid, for the number of workers\* on site;
7. A safety procedure for workers\* working alone; and
8. The review and revision of health and safety practices after major incidents or accidents.

## Annex D: High Conservation Value\* (HCV\*) Framework

The *High Conservation Value\* (HCV\*)* framework assists *The Organization\** in determining whether *HCVs\** are present within the *forest\** area under management. Organized as a series of questions, the framework guides the assessment process that is then verified by the certification body.

Upon the successful identification of a *HCV\**, *The Organization\** is required to conform to the *Principle 9 Criteria\** and *Indicators\**.

### Use of the Framework

Each of the six categories of *HCV\** contain a series of questions. Negative answers mean that the *forest\** does not include *HCV\** based on current information. Positive answers lead to further investigation through additional questions.

A positive response to any question that is labelled DEFINITIVE means that the elements under consideration are *HCVs\**. However, a negative response to a question labelled DEFINITIVE should not be interpreted to mean that the *HCV\** threshold has not been reached. Rather, *The Organization\** should then answer the questions labelled GUIDANCE. Positive answers indicate the potential presence of *HCVs\**. If questions labelled GUIDANCE are answered positively, it strengthens the potential for the presence of *HCVs\**. It is then expected that *The Organization\** will provide a summary substantiating why the *forest\** area was identified as an *HCV\** or not.

**Note:** The framework is not intended to be a prescriptive approach. Guidance in interpreting the six components of the *HCV\** definition leads the investigation to develop the evidence and thresholds for making an *HCV\** designation. If an *HCV\** designation is determined, *The Organization\** should provide a rationale for the decision. Ultimately, the decision for designating a *HCV\** resides with the forest manager, based on the input of *experts\** and *engagement\** with *stakeholders\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**. Where community needs (*HCV 5*) or cultural values (*HCV 6*) specific to *Indigenous Peoples\** are identified on behalf of the *Indigenous Peoples\**, then as a *precautionary approach\**, *engagement\** processes based on the right to *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\* (FPIC)\** should be used (refer to Principle 3 and FSC Canada Free, Prior and Informed Consent (FPIC) Guidance).

### The Issue of Scale\*

Criterion 9.1 of Principle 9 states that assessments for the presence of *HCVs\** will be appropriate to the *scale, intensity and risk\** of the operation. This implies that expectations for smaller or less intensively managed forest operations would be lower than for larger or more intensively managed operations.

- The FSC definition implies that there are multiple *scales\** at which *HCVs\** are identified. For example, a *globally or nationally significant* designation would be applied to broad *landscapes\** or at an *ecoregional scale\**, with *forests\** that are *significant\** on a global, continental or national (Canadian) level, while *regionally significant* might apply to a *watershed\** or a specific *ecosystem\** that is *significant\** at the provincial or regional level. At *scales\** where *forests\** are under 1000 ha, a landowner with a rare old growth *stand\** in a highly developed *landscape\** would be required to designate the *forest\** as a *HCV\** and ensure the same *conservation\** approach as for a large land holder.
- The FSC definition also identifies differing *scales\** between the various *HCVs\**. For example, a large *landscape\** level *forest\** (Category 2) tends to be large in geographic *scale\** (e.g. greater than 50,000 ha), and therefore the thresholds used to describe the *HCV\** and related



*conservation\** attributes must be relevant to that *large scale\**. Identification of an *HCV area\** based on concentrations of biodiversity values (Category 1) may be large, medium or small (e.g. less than 1000 ha in *geographic scale\**), and should be appropriate to the biology of the species or groups of species. *Forest\** areas identified as *HCVs\** based on being in or containing rare, threatened or endangered *ecosystems\** (Category 3) might encompass a range of *scales\**, from large areas to single *stands\** or *ecosites*. *Forests\** identified as providing basic services of nature (Category 4), and basic needs of communities (Category 5) might be medium to large in *scale\** with *conservation\** actions relevant to those *scales\**.

- *HCVs\** are environmental, ecological and social in nature and do not necessarily follow administrative boundaries. The *HCV\** and the area where it is located may be smaller or larger than the actual *forest\** being assessed or audited. The forest manager's direct responsibility is for the lands over which she/he controls, however *Indicators\** in Principle 9 require *The Organization\** to working within their *sphere of influence\** to maintain or enhance *HCVs\** that are beyond their boundaries.

### **The Precautionary Approach\***

An important component to the management of *HCVs\** is the application of a *precautionary approach\**. As *HCVs\** are values that are deemed to be regionally, nationally or internationally *significant\** and thus require the highest "duty of care", the application of a *precautionary approach\** is one way of helping to ensure that these values are maintained.

For its use in this Standard, FSC defines the *precautionary approach\** as:

*An approach requiring that when the available information indicates that management activities\* pose a threat\* of severe or irreversible damage to the environment or a threat\* to human welfare, The Organization\* will take explicit and effective measures to prevent the damage and avoid the risks\* to welfare, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of environmental values\* are uncertain.*

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p><b>HCV 1 - Species Diversity</b>  <b>Concentrations of <i>biological diversity</i>* including <i>endemic</i>* species, and <i>rare</i>*, <i>threatened</i>* or endangered species, that are <i>significant</i>* at global, regional or national levels.</b></p>			
<p>1. Does the <i>forest</i>* contain <i>species at risk</i>* or potential <i>habitat</i>* of <i>species at risk</i>* as listed by international, national or territorial/provincial authorities?</p>	<p>Ensures the maintenance of vulnerable and/or irreplaceable elements of biodiversity.</p> <p>This <i>Indicator</i>* allows for a single species or a concentration of species to meet <i>HCV</i>* thresholds.</p>	<p><i>Global:</i>  CITES (Appendix I and II AND III)<sup>4</sup>, IUCN red data list<sup>5</sup>, Conservation Data Centre G1 and G2 element occurrences.</p> <p><i>Regional/National:</i>  Species designated as <i>rare</i>*, <i>threatened</i>* or endangered by provincial, territorial or national legislation (e.g. provincial red lists and COSEWIC<sup>6</sup> list in Canada). Information is managed in each province by Conservation Data Centers.</p> <p>The list of species representative of <i>habitat</i>* types naturally occurring in the <i>Management Unit</i>* is determined or reviewed by qualified ecologist <i>expert</i>* (s).</p>	<p>A single species with <i>habitat</i>* in the <i>forest</i>* is a <i>HCV</i>* in the Canadian context.</p> <p>Are any <i>rare</i>*, <i>threatened</i>* or endangered species in the <i>forest</i>*? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>The assessment of whether a species is a <i>HCV</i>* is not dependent on whether there is a <i>risk</i>* from forest operations. Management and <i>risk</i>* to a value is not relevant to the significance of the value. Once it is designated as a <i>HCV</i>*, the specific management requirements are determined. In some cases, no management will be required because there is no <i>risk</i>* from forestry. (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>Is there <i>critical habitat</i>* for <i>rare</i>*, <i>threatened</i>* or endangered species in the <i>forest</i>*? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>Are there any ecological or taxonomic groups of <i>rare species</i>* that would together constitute a <i>HCV</i>*? (GUIDANCE)</p>

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.cites.org/eng/app/index.php>

<sup>5</sup> <http://www.iucnredlist.org/>

<sup>6</sup> Information on Canadian federally listed species can be obtained at: <http://www.cosewic.gc.ca/index.htm>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
2. Does the forest* contain endemic* species?	Ensures the maintenance of vulnerable and/or irreplaceable elements of biodiversity.	Provincial Data Centers will record any endemic* species.	Does the forest* contain an endemic* species or concentration of endemic* species? (DEFINITIVE)
3. Does the forest* include critical habitat* containing globally, nationally or regionally significant* seasonal concentration of species (one or several species, e.g. concentrations of wildlife in breeding sites, wintering sites, migration sites, migration routes or corridors - latitudinal as well as altitudinal)?	Addresses wildlife habitat* requirements critical* to maintaining population viability (regional "hot spots").	<p><i>Global:</i> BirdLife International<sup>7</sup>, Audubon Society<sup>8</sup>, Conservation International</p> <p><i>Regional/National:</i> National and local agencies with responsibility for wildlife conservation*; Results from habitat* models.</p> <p>Local experts*, traditional knowledge*</p> <p>Bird Studies Canada.<sup>9</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada<sup>10</sup></p>	<p>Are there any landscape* features or habitat* characteristics that tend to correlate with significant temporal concentrations of a species or groups of species (e.g. where species occurrence data is limited)? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Is there an IBA (Important Bird Area) in the forest*? (DEFINITIVE)</p>

<sup>7</sup> BirdLife International provides maps and lists of Important Bird Areas. Current level of coverage varies between regions and in countries within regions. Information (including data sources), can be found at <http://www.birdlife.net/sites/index.cfm>

<sup>8</sup> Audubon Society. Information on Important Bird Areas in America can be found at: <http://www.audubon.org/bird/iba/index.html>

<sup>9</sup> Bird Studies Canada maintains information on identified Important Bird Areas at: <http://www.ibacanada.ca/>

<sup>10</sup> Ducks Unlimited Canada: <http://www.ducks.ca/>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p>4. Does the <i>forest*</i> contain <i>critical habitat*</i> for regionally <i>significant*</i> species (e.g. species declining regionally)?</p>	<p>Meta-population viability</p>	<p>Regionally <i>significant*</i> species are determined using the sources below.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Conservation Data Centre G3, S1-S3 species and communities.</li> <li>2. Range and population estimates from national or local authorities and local <i>experts*</i> for:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) red listed species (see sources above);</li> <li>b) <i>species at risk*</i> (in existing legislation and/or policy);</li> <li>c) results from <i>habitat*</i> models,</li> <li>d) species representative of <i>habitat*</i> types naturally occurring in the <i>Management Unit*</i> or <i>focal species*</i>; and,</li> <li>e) species identified as <i>ecologically significant*</i> through <i>engagement*</i>.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>The list of species representative of <i>habitat*</i> types naturally occurring in the <i>Management Unit*</i> is determined or reviewed by qualified ecologist <i>experts*</i>.</p>	<p>Is there known <i>critical habitat*</i> for a regionally <i>significant*</i> species (including aquatic species)? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>One reason for a species being regionally <i>significant*</i> is that there has been a decline over time. This can include aquatic species that are within the <i>forest*</i>. Some species may be declining but are still common. Beaver and deer in some areas can undergo steep declines for a period and may be identified as regionally <i>significant*</i>.</p> <p>Is the population of regionally <i>significant*</i> species locally at <i>risk*</i> (e.g. continuing trend is declining rather than stable or improving)? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Does the <i>forest*</i> contain limiting <i>habitat*</i> for regionally <i>significant*</i> species? (GUIDANCE)</p>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
5. Does the <i>forest</i> * support concentrations of species at the edge of their natural ranges or outlier populations? <sup>11</sup>	Relevant <i>conservation</i> * issues include vulnerability against range contraction and potential genetic variation at range edge. Outlier and edge of range populations may also play a <i>critical</i> * role in genetic/population adaptation to global warming.	Range and population estimates from national or local authorities and local <i>experts</i> * for: a) red listed species (see sources above); b) major <i>forest</i> (tree species) <i>types</i> *; and c) species identified as ecologically <i>significant</i> * through <i>engagement</i> *.  The list of species representative of <i>habitat</i> * types naturally occurring in the <i>Management Unit</i> * is determined or reviewed by qualified ecologist <i>experts</i> *.	Are any of the range edge or outlier species representative of <i>habitat</i> * types naturally occurring in the <i>Management Unit</i> *? (DEFINITIVE)  Are there any ecological or taxonomic groups of range edge and/or outlier species/sub-species that would together constitute a globally, nationally or regionally <i>significant</i> * concentration? (GUIDANCE)  Are there naturally occurring outlier populations of commercial tree species? (DEFINITIVE)  Commercial species are highlighted here because of their combined importance, biologically and economically.

---

<sup>11</sup> NatureServe provides searchable databases and other information on species and ecosystem distribution in North America ([www.natureserve.org](http://www.natureserve.org)) and distribution of birds and mammals in Latin America at [www.infonatura.org](http://www.infonatura.org)

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p>6. Does the <i>forest*</i> lie within, adjacent to, or contain a conservation area:</p> <p>a) designated by an international authority,</p> <p>b) legally designated or proposed by relevant federal/provincial/territorial legislative body, or</p> <p>c) identified in regional land use plans or <i>conservation*</i> plans.</p>	<p>Ensures compliance with the <i>conservation*</i> intent of a designated <i>protected area*</i>.</p>	<p>International designations include: UNESCO World Heritage Sites<sup>12</sup> RAMSAR sites<sup>13</sup> International Biological Program sites</p> <p>Legally designated sites in Canada: CCAD (available from GeoGratis) WWF Designated Areas Data Base</p> <p>Areas under deferral pending completion of land use planning and-or completion of <i>protected areas*</i> system.</p> <p>Local government land use plans.</p> <p>Other <i>conservation*</i> planning exercises (e.g., Previous WWF-Canada conservation suitability analysis).</p> <p>Where there is conflicting information regarding the location and/or <i>conservation*</i> status of a conservation area designated by an international authority, then the forest manager should assume that the <i>forest*</i> contains HCVs*.</p>	<p>Are the values for which the conservation area has been identified, consistent with the assessment of HCVs* in this framework? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>To illustrate, a park may not have any values that would qualify it as a HCV*, as in a purely recreational park, although this would be unusual. If it is not designated as a conservation value, a park may have social or economic significance and be designated elsewhere in the HCV* framework.</p> <p>Are there <i>forest*</i> areas important to connect conservation areas to maintain the values for which the conservation areas were identified? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Are there <i>forest*</i> areas important to safeguard conservation areas to maintain the values for which the conservation areas were identified? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Most parks or other areas legally protected from industrial use are not part of a forest license. In that case, the value in need of <i>protection*</i> by forest companies could be the boundary line to ensure no trespassing occurs, or visual considerations. Whether a "buffer" is needed or important is a local decision depending on several factors. See Criterion 6.5 of the Standard for further guidance.</p>

<sup>12</sup> UNESCO World Heritage Sites. Information can be obtained from: <http://en.unesco.org/>

<sup>13</sup> RAMSAR sites. Maps of wetlands of international importance in Canada can be obtained from: [www.wetlands.org](http://www.wetlands.org)

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p><b>HCV 2 – Landscape*-level ecosystems* and mosaics.</b>  <b>Intact Forest Landscapes* and large landscape*-level ecosystems* and ecosystem* mosaics that are significant* at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.</b></p>			
<p>7. Does the forest* constitute or form part of a globally, nationally, or regionally significant* forest landscape* that includes populations of most native species*?</p>	<p>Large, intact ecosystems* are genetic and population reservoirs for the surrounding lands, and provide areas of sufficient size for landscape*-scale natural processes to occur.</p>	<p>Global Forest Watch Canada;  GIS-related information from forest companies and government resource-management agencies;  Global Forest Watch International.</p>	<p>Are there contiguous forest landscapes* that have the following characteristics? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• at least 50,000 ha in size;</li> <li>• minimal width of 10 km;</li> <li>• free of permanent infrastructure* and less than 5% non-permanent anthropogenic disturbance;</li> <li>• free of large-scale industrial resource extraction activities;</li> <li>• dominated by forest*, but inclusion of other ecosystems* to a reasonable* extent is permissible;</li> <li>• dominated by native plants and communities;</li> <li>• not necessarily dominated by old forest* communities.</li> </ul> <p>For Intact Forest Landscapes*:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refer to FSC Advice Note 20-007-018 V1-0 for Advice on interpreting the default clause of Motion 65 for interim direction on implementing management requirements for Intact Forest Landscapes*.</li> <li>• See also May 2017 FSC Document “Questions and Answers Pertaining to the Motion 65 Advice Note.”</li> <li>• Refer to FSC Canada's Interim Guidance for the Delineation of Intact Forest Landscapes for guidance on IFL Delineation</li> </ul>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
			If unfragmented forest <i>landscapes*</i> exist that are larger than 5,000 ha but smaller than 50,000 ha, the area may be considered a <i>landscape*</i> level forest* and addressed through Question 10 of HCV 3.
<b>HCV 3 – Ecosystems* and habitats*. Rare*, threatened*, or endangered ecosystem*, habitats* or refugia*.</b>			
8. Does the forest* contain naturally rare ecosystem* types?	These forests* contain many unique species and communities that are adapted only to the conditions found in these rare forest types*.	<p>Conservation Data Centre G1-G3 community types;</p> <p>W W F Ecoregion Conservation Assessments;</p> <p>Conservation International National vegetation surveys and maps;</p> <p>Local research institutions</p> <p>Authorities on Biodiversity (e.g. NatureServe)</p>	<p>Are there ecosystems* that have been officially classified as being rare, threatened or endangered by a relevant national or international organization? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>Is a significant amount of the global extent of these ecosystems* present in the country and/or ecoregion? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p><b>Application note:</b> Mapping of these areas may not be precise because of limited information. Mapping may not be required unless forestry operations are to occur in the vicinity.</p>



<p>9. Are there <i>ecosystem*</i> types within the <i>forest*</i> or <i>ecoregion*</i> that have significantly declined or under sufficient present and/or future development pressures that they will likely become rare in the future (e.g., old seral stages)?</p>	<p>Vulnerability and meta-population viability.</p> <p>This <i>Indicator*</i> includes anthropogenically rare <i>ecosystem*</i> types (e.g. late seral red and white pine in eastern Canada).</p>	<p>Relevant government authorities;</p> <p>W W F Ecoregion Conservation Assessments;</p> <p>Suitable <i>forest*</i> or vegetation inventories;</p> <p>Potential vegetation mapping;</p> <p>Regional and local <i>experts*</i>;</p> <p>Conservation Data Centre S1-S3 community types.</p>	<p>Does the <i>forest*</i> consist of mature and/or <i>old forest* stands*</i>, where the amount of <i>old forest*</i> remaining in that <i>ecosystem*</i> type has been reduced to less than 50% of estimated natural occurrence of <i>old forest*</i>? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>Is the <i>forest*</i> within an <i>ecoregion*</i> with little remaining original <i>forest type*</i>? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Have these <i>ecosystems*</i> significantly declined (e.g. less than 50% loss)? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p><b>Application note:</b> Targets for the previous two questions should be based on <i>landscape*</i> dynamics (e.g. <i>range of natural variation*</i>).</p> <p>Is there a significant proportion of the declining <i>ecosystem*</i> type within the <i>Management Unit*</i> in comparison to the broader <i>ecoregion*</i>? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p><b>Application note:</b> If a type is abundant in adjacent <i>protected area*</i>, there may be less need for HCV designation.</p> <p>Does potential vegetation mapping identify areas within the <i>Management Unit*</i> that can support the declining <i>ecosystem*</i> type (i.e., regeneration potential)? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>How well is each <i>ecosystem*</i> effectively secured by the <i>protected area*</i> network and the national/regional legislation? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p><b>Application note:</b> This question is based on the premise that managers should maintain all <i>forest types*</i> and ages within a <i>reasonable*</i> balance considering <i>natural conditions*</i>. Although this can be very difficult on some historically damaged <i>forests*</i>, <i>restoration*</i> should be the <i>long-term*</i> goal. For example, the historic old white pine <i>forests*</i> of central Ontario are often designated HCVs and are slowly recovering after many decades of <i>high grading*</i> in the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries.</p>
---	---	---	---

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p>10. Are large <i>landscape*</i> level <i>forests*</i> (i.e., large unfragmented <i>forests*</i>) rare or absent in the <i>forest*</i> or <i>ecoregion*</i>?</p>	<p>In regions or <i>forests*</i> where large functioning <i>landscape*</i> level <i>forests*</i> are rare or do not exist, as in highly fragmented <i>forests*</i>, many of the remnant forest patches require consideration as potential <i>HCVs*</i> (i.e. 'best of the rest').</p> <p>Identifies remnant forest patches/blocks where unfragmented (by permanent <i>infrastructure*</i>) <i>landscapes*</i> do not exceed size thresholds.</p>	<p>Global Forest Watch intactness mapping;</p> <p>Forest cover data provided by companies/government.</p>	<p>Are moderate to large remnant patches (thousands of hectares) the best examples of intact <i>forest*</i> for their community and landform types? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Does the <i>Management Unit*</i> contain intact or undeveloped <i>watersheds*</i> over 5,000 ha in size? (Guidance)</p> <p>Do the largest remnant forest patches include a significant proportion of climax species (i.e. not dominated by pioneer species)? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p><b>Application note:</b> 'Remnant', here describes the remaining patches of the <i>natural forest*</i> that still contain the original <i>ecosystem*</i> characteristic species and structure.</p> <p><b>Application note:</b> In designating remnant <i>landscape*</i> level <i>forests*</i>, managers should consider structural features such as woody debris and standing dead trees (i.e. structurally complex), late seral <i>stands*</i>, known populations of <i>significant*</i> species, or species representative of <i>habitat*</i> types naturally occurring in the <i>Management Unit*</i>.</p>
<p>11. Are there nationally /regionally <i>significant*</i> diverse or unique forest <i>ecosystems*</i> or <i>forests*</i> associated with unique aquatic <i>ecosystems*</i>?</p>	<p>Vulnerability; species diversity; <i>significant*</i> ecological processes.</p>	<p>Relevant government authorities; WWF Ecoregion Conservation Assessments;</p> <p>Regional environmental background studies;</p> <p>Ducks Unlimited Canada;</p> <p>Government databases (e.g. Areas of Natural &amp; Scientific Interest (ANSI) in Ontario).</p>	<p>Are there important and/or unique geological areas that strongly influence vegetation cover or wildlife features, such as serpentine soils, marble outcrops, karst hot springs for bat hibernacula? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Are there important and/or unique microclimatic conditions that strongly influence vegetation cover, such as high rainfall, protected valleys? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Do these <i>ecosystems*</i> possess any exceptional characteristics, including exceptional species richness, <i>critical*</i> species, etc.? (GUIDANCE)</p>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p><b>HCV 4 – Critical* ecosystem services*.</b>  <b>Basic ecosystem services* in critical* situations, including protection* of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.</b></p>			
<p>12. Does the forest* provide a significant source of drinking water?</p>	<p>The potential impact to human communities is so significant as to be catastrophic, leading to significant loss of productivity, or sickness and death.</p>	<p>The forest manager should obtain the information from the relevant authorities - resource management studies, relevant economic development studies, traditional occupancy studies, regional land use plans, etc. - to determine if the wrong actions or management could cause serious cumulative or catastrophic impacts on these basic services.</p>	<p>Is the watershed* or recharge area* critical* to maintaining the quality, quantity and seasonal flows of the primary drinking water source for a community or group of individuals? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>Is the watershed* or recharge area* critical* to maintaining the quality, quantity and seasonal flows of agricultural irrigation water sources, or water for other significant economic activities? (GUIDANCE)</p>
<p>13. Are there forests* that provide a significant ecological service in mediating flooding and/or drought, controlling stream flow regulation, and water quality?</p>	<p>Forest* areas play a critical* role in maintaining water quantity and quality and the service breakdown has catastrophic impacts or is irreplaceable.</p>	<p>Hydrological maps;  Hydrologists in government departments or local research institutions.</p>	<p>Are there high-risk* areas for flooding or drought? (DEFINITIVE)</p> <p>Are there particular forest* areas that potentially affect a significant or major portion of the water flow? For example, 75% of water in a larger watershed* is funneled through a specific catchment area, river channel, or other critical* sub-watershed* area. (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Does the forest* occur within a sub-watershed* that is critically important to the overall catchment basin? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Are there particular forest* areas that are critical* sub-watersheds* that potentially affect water supplies for other services, such as reservoirs, irrigation, river recharge or hydroelectric schemes? (GUIDANCE)</p>
<p>14. Are there forests* critical* to erosion control?</p>	<p>Soil, terrain or snow stability, including control of erosion,</p>	<p>Maps, remote sensing data, aerial photos, Governmental departments,</p>	<p>Are there forest* areas where the degree of slope carries high risk* of erosion, landslides and avalanches that affect human infrastructure*? (DEFINITIVE)</p>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
	sedimentation, landslides, or avalanches.	<i>engagement*</i> with relevant <i>experts*</i> .	<p>Are there soil and geology site types that are particularly prone to erosion and terrain instability? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Is the spatial extent of erosion-prone or unstable terrain such that the <i>forest*</i> is at high <i>risk*</i> of impact and of cumulative impacts? (GUIDANCE)</p>
15. Are there <i>forests*</i> that provide a <i>critical*</i> barrier to destructive fire (in areas where fire is not a common natural agent of disturbance)?	Recent forest fire events in Canada have raised the interest in this concept.		<p>Are there <i>forest*</i> areas where there is a high <i>risk*</i> of uncontrolled, destructive fire and in which <i>forest*</i> areas or <i>forest types*</i> can act as a barrier to the spread of fires?</p> <p>Do these <i>forest*</i> areas contain or are they adjacent to human settlements or communities that would be at <i>risk*</i> from uncontrolled, destructive forest fire?</p> <p>Managers should accept HCV designations for <i>forests*</i> adjacent to communities and manage using the precautionary principle in consideration of the safety of the inhabitants. How this is defined should be determined locally.</p>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p>16. Are there forest <i>landscapes*</i>, or regional <i>landscapes*</i>, that have a critical impact on agriculture or fisheries?</p>	<p>Mediating wind and microclimate at an ecoregional scale affecting agricultural or fisheries production. Riparian <i>forests*</i> play a <i>critical*</i> role in maintaining fisheries by providing bank stability, sediment control, nutrient inputs, and microhabitats.</p> <p>More local effects of <i>forest*</i> areas adjacent to agriculture and fisheries production may be more relevant in the HCV* component regarding meeting basic needs of <i>local communities*</i>.</p>	<p>Agricultural and Fisheries scientists in university and research institutions;</p> <p>Governmental Departments (e.g. Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Agriculture and Agri-food Canada);</p> <p>Local and provincial government departments.</p>	<p>Are there agricultural or fisheries production areas in the <i>forest*</i> that are potentially severely negatively affected by changes in wind and microclimate and microhabitat, such as woody debris from riparian vegetation? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Are there fisheries areas, spawning areas or other <i>critical*</i> fish <i>habitat*</i> - either commercial or tourism outfitters - dependent on the larger <i>landscape*</i> condition?</p> <p>Are there other non-timber resources such as fur trap lines, wildrice production areas, mushroom <i>harvest areas*</i>, berry <i>harvest areas*</i> that are dependent on the larger <i>landscape*</i>?</p>
<p><b>HCV 5 - Community needs.</b>  <b>Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of local communities* or Indigenous Peoples* (for example for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water), identified through engagement* with these communities or Indigenous Peoples*.</b></p>			
<p>17. Are there <i>local communities*</i>? This should include both people living inside the <i>forest*</i> area and those living adjacent to it.</p>	<p>There is a distinction being made between the use by individuals and where use of the <i>forest*</i> is fundamental for <i>local communities*</i>.</p>	<p><i>Engagement*</i> with the communities themselves is the most important way of collecting information.</p> <p>Literature sources, such as reports and papers, can be very useful sources of information.</p>	<p>Having established that the community uses the <i>forest*</i> to fulfill some needs it is now necessary to assess whether it is fundamental to meeting any basic needs. This question applies to all livelihoods, not just subsistence. The way that this assessment can be done is variable, depending on the socio-economic context and the need. However, it will always involve <i>engagement*</i> with the community itself.</p>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
		<p>Knowledgeable people and organizations such as <i>local community*</i> organizations, NGOs, or academic institutions. This type of group can often provide a quick introduction to the issues and provide support for further work.</p> <p>Review of studies of traditional land use and non-timber use of the <i>forest*</i>.</p> <p>Review of socio-economic profiles of communities.</p>	<p><i>Engagement*</i> can be conducted by people other than the forest managers directly. <i>Engagement*</i> should use locally appropriate language, and not FSC technical terminology, such as <i>HCV*</i>, threshold, etc.).</p> <p>The following are general guidance questions to assess whether the value meets <i>HCV*</i> thresholds.</p> <p>Is this the sole source of the value(s) for the <i>local communities*</i>? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Is there a significant impact to the <i>local communities*</i> because of a reduced supply of these values? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>If community members make use of the <i>forest*</i> for basic needs or livelihoods, such as food, medicine, fodder, fuel, building, craft materials, and income, it should be assumed that this is an important value and a possible <i>HCV*</i>.</p>
<p><b>HCV 6 - Cultural values.</b>  <b>Sites, resources, habitats* and landscapes* of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical* cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of local communities* or Indigenous Peoples*, identified through engagement* with these local communities* or Indigenous Peoples*. (Source: FSC 2011).</b></p>			
<p>18. Is the traditional cultural identity of the <i>local community*</i> particularly tied to a specific <i>forest*</i> area?</p>	<p>In this context of this standard "<i>local community*</i>" is defined as: (Human) communities that are in or adjacent to the <i>Management Unit*</i>, and also those that are close enough to have a significant impact on the</p>	<p><i>Engagement*</i> with the communities themselves is the most important way of collecting information. This is difficult to do and may require professional help in the planning or implementation.</p> <p>Knowledgeable people and organizations such as <i>local community*</i> organizations or academic institutions. Literature</p>	<p>Assessors will be presented with a wide range of <i>HCVs*</i> as culturally <i>significant*</i>. The practice in Canada is acceptance of this range of values as <i>HCVs*</i>. Some forest inhabitants consider the entire <i>forest*</i> to be of <i>significant*</i> value, while others have a small area with a local well-known value. There are several examples of values that may not meet the threshold (or significance level) for FSC definition but which functionally must use precautionary management.</p>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
	<p>economy or the <i>environmental values*</i> of the <i>Management Unit*</i> or to have their economies, <i>collective rights*</i>, or environments values significantly affected by the <i>forest management activities*</i> on the <i>Management Unit*</i>."</p> <p>In Canada, communities to be considered are the ones officially identified as a municipality by the Canada Revenue Agency who lists them and shows their qualified donees status under the Income Tax Act (<a href="http://www.cra-arc.gc.ca/chrts-gvng/qlfd-dns/mncplts-eng.html">http://www.cra-arc.gc.ca/chrts-gvng/qlfd-dns/mncplts-eng.html</a>). The respective provincial lists may be also used.</p>	<p>sources such as reports and papers, where available.</p> <p>Review studies of traditional land use and non-timber use of the <i>forest*</i>.</p> <p>Review of socio-economic profiles of communities.</p> <p>Review of websites, community promotional material, brochures, etc.</p>	<p>Do the communities consider the <i>forest*</i> to be culturally <i>significant*</i>? Possible indications for cultural importance include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Names for <i>landscape*</i> features;</li> <li>2. Stories about the <i>forest*</i>;</li> <li>3. Sacred or religious sites;</li> <li>4. Historical associations; and,</li> <li>5. Amenity or aesthetic value.</li> </ol>
<p>19. Is there a significant overlap of values, such as ecological and/or cultural values, that</p>	<p>Consideration of several spatially overlapping values is important in optimizing</p>	<p>Neighbourhood analysis can be used to summarize point values, such as species occurrences, feeding areas, mineral licks, or spawning areas, within a spatial</p>	<p>- Are there several overlapping conservation values? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p><b>Application note:</b> When there are two or more events or values that may not meet an HCV* threshold individually,</p>

Item	Rationale	Possible Sources	Guidance on Assessing HCV*
<p>individually did not meet HCV thresholds, but collectively constitute HCVs?</p>	<p><i>conservation*</i> management.</p> <p>Individual values that do not meet the threshold for <i>critical*</i> and/or outstanding may collectively meet the threshold.</p>	<p>window of a size that is relevant for the <i>ecosystem*</i> type and values under consideration.</p> <p>If concentration of single values was not undertaken in any of the previous steps (e.g. S1-S3 species occurrences), then include this in the analysis.</p> <p>Overlays of multiple values to assess spatial coincidence.</p>	<p>managers should use their discretion in assessing the combined value as <i>HCV*</i>.</p> <p>Do the overlapping values represent multiple themes, as species distribution, <i>significant* habitat*</i>, concentration area, relatively unfragmented <i>landscape*</i>, for example? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Are the overlapping values within, adjacent to, or near an identified <i>HCV*</i> or existing designated conservation lands or secondary conservation lands? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Are the overlapping values adjacent or near an existing <i>protected area*</i>? (GUIDANCE)</p> <p>Do the overlapping values provide an option to meet <i>protected areas*</i> representation requirements, that is, can one overlap an under-represented <i>landscape*</i> as assessed using a <i>protected areas*</i> gap analysis? (GUIDANCE)</p>



## Annex E: Dispute Resolution

A key outcome of implementing this Standard is the avoidance and/or mitigation of *disputes\**. All *disputes\** that need to be addressed through this Standard are related to, or a consequence of, *The Organization's\** activities. Requirements throughout the Standard are designed to foster dialogue, and involvement in management planning is intended to build agreement and support. However, a *dispute\** may still occur and the dispute resolution process should be used only after other measures have been exhausted.

Please note this Standard is making an important distinction between a *dispute\** and a *dispute of substantial magnitude\**. As per the Glossary:

**Dispute.** Represent a formal disagreement, after the initial attempts to resolve a *complaint\** have not been achieved.

**Dispute of substantial magnitude:** Is a *dispute\** that involves one or more of the following:

- Where the negative impact of *management activities\** on *local communities\** or on *Indigenous Peoples'\** *legal\** or *customary rights\** is of such a scale that it cannot be reversed or mitigated;
- Physical violence;
- Significant destruction of property;
- Presence of law enforcement or military bodies;
- Acts of intimidation against *workers\** and *stakeholders\**.

A *dispute\** can become of substantial magnitude if it is of substantial duration, implies a significant number of interest and has a significant negative impact to the forest resource / value.

*Disputes of substantial magnitude\** are not common and represent the exception.

### Structure of the Dispute Resolution Criteria\*

The structure of the *Criteria\** addressing *disputes\** throughout the Standard (Criteria 1.6, 2.6, 4.6 and 7.6) is designed to address the various types of concerns raised by individuals or communities, and ensure the appropriate level of response and action required is taken by *The Organization\**.

In the everyday operation of *The Organization\**, enquiries, such as requests for information or a request for a solution to an issue, from *stakeholders\** are common and most often *The Organization\** can easily and expeditiously address these. If a *stakeholder\** is not satisfied with the outcome of its query or is not receiving a response within a *reasonable\** time, he may lodge a *complaint\** internally with *The Organization\**. If the *complaint\** has not been resolved to the satisfaction of the *stakeholder\**, and if the *stakeholder\** wishes to pursue the matter further, the issue escalates to a *dispute\**.

In this Standard, this escalation process requires that *The Organization\** have in place a system to track, manage and address *complaints\** and *disputes\** related to:

- Statutory or *customary law\** (Criterion 1.6);
- Working conditions while working for *The Organization\** (Criterion 2.6);
- Impacts of *management activities\** on *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\** (Criterion 4.6); and
- Impacts of *management activities\** on other *affected stakeholders\** (excludes *local communities\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**) (Criterion 7.6).

To address the application of *dispute\** management amongst various parties and aspects of forest management, a consistent framework has been developed and is being applied to each applicable *Criterion\**. However, it is possible that *The Organization\** chooses to use the same tool or process to meet the requirements of the *Indicators\** in different *Criteria\**. The general framework steps applied in Criteria 1.6, 2.6, 4.6 and 7.6 are:

1. A system is in place whereby people can make their *complaints\** known to *The Organization\**.
2. The development of a general dispute resolution process framework, which needs to be adapted through *culturally appropriate\* engagement\** prior to implementation.
3. *Complaints\** are responded to in a *timely manner\**. If not, they become a *dispute\** and the dispute resolution process is then adapted and implemented.
4. Records of *complaints\** and *disputes\** are kept, as well as outcomes of actions taken.
5. For Principles 1 and 4 only: If the *dispute\** is elevated to a *dispute of substantial magnitude\**, then the value or right at *risk\** must be maintained/protected.

### **Dispute Resolution Processes and Indigenous Peoples\*:**

*Complaints\** from *Indigenous Peoples\** are dealt with using the same structure as described above. *Complaints\** related to statutory or *customary law\**, working conditions (if applicable), and to impacts of *forest management activities\** are addressed as described above. However, *Indigenous Peoples\** may also have *complaints\** related to the implementation of agreements they may have with *The Organization\** that are covered in Principle 3. The Standard also requires a dispute resolution process clause to be included in any *binding agreements\** (Indicator 3.3.3) and to *Free, Prior and Informed Consent\** agreements with *Indigenous Peoples\** (Indicator 3.2.5).

### **Dispute Resolution Process**

The design of the dispute resolution processes and the related resolution mechanisms should consider the following:

- Account for a wide range of situations, including addressing cases of *dispute of substantial magnitude\**;
- The use of different approaches to resolving the *dispute\**, which may include a neutral third party, such as mediation, negotiation or other conciliatory processes. These should match the level and nature of the *dispute\**;
- Consensual or restorative processes such as mediation, negotiation or other conciliatory processes where the goal is for the parties to reach agreement are preferred;
- *Disputes\** are best dealt with those closest to the situation and with the relevant parties involved. If there is a *dispute of substantial magnitude\**, the response should be tied to the specific area that is under *dispute\**;
- Ceasing operations may be considered as a part of the dispute resolution process when proposed *management activities\** may negatively impact the rights or interests of *affected stakeholders\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**, or may generate irreversible damage to an important value;
- In the case of *disputes\** arising from the infringement of *Indigenous Peoples\** rights, an immediate cease of operations should be part of the resolution mechanism, for as long as is required to establish an appropriate dispute resolution process. The intention here is to require that the parties engage in dialogue to properly identify the nature and scope of the *dispute\** and appropriate mechanisms for resolving such a *dispute\**.

If a *dispute\** occurs, *The Organization\** is expected to follow the steps required in their dispute resolution process, to respond in a *timely manner\**, to document the *dispute\** and the process used, and to justify unresolved *disputes\**. It is also expected that all parties involved in the *dispute\** are working in *good faith\** and in a *reasonable\** manner, and that all parties can demonstrate the efforts deployed to resolve the *dispute\**.

The Standard also requires that *The Organization's\** dispute resolution processes be *publicly available\** to inform parties, at least, of the general process. The Standard does not necessarily require the specific aspects of the dispute resolution process implemented with a specific party to be public. Parties may agree on what should be public and what should remain confidential.

For *interested stakeholders\** and interested individuals, no dispute resolution process is formally required to be put in place. However, the Standard requires *The Organization\** to provide opportunities for *engagement\** in the planning process of *management activities\** upon request. *Interested stakeholders\** may also use the processes described in the last section of this Annex: *FSC Procedures to Process Disputes\* and Appeals*.

### **Disputes of Substantial Magnitude\***

If the *dispute\** escalates and becomes a *dispute of substantial magnitude\**, operations may be required to cease in the area directly related to where the *dispute\** exists. However, ceasing operations should be used as a last resort when the previous actions have failed to resolve the issue, and where there is a real danger associated to the continuation of forest operations. It is then required that the dispute resolution process includes mechanisms to address *disputes of substantial magnitude\** which should include provisions in case of an emergency to avoid implementing the last resort action of ceasing operations.

### **Existing Dispute Resolution Processes**

Where local or *national laws\** for resolving grievances and/or compensation exist, implementation of these provisions might suffice to conform with these *Criteria\**, if agreed through *engagement\** with the party involved. If there is no agreement that these laws suffice, then additional mechanisms developed through *engagement\** with the party involved, are required.

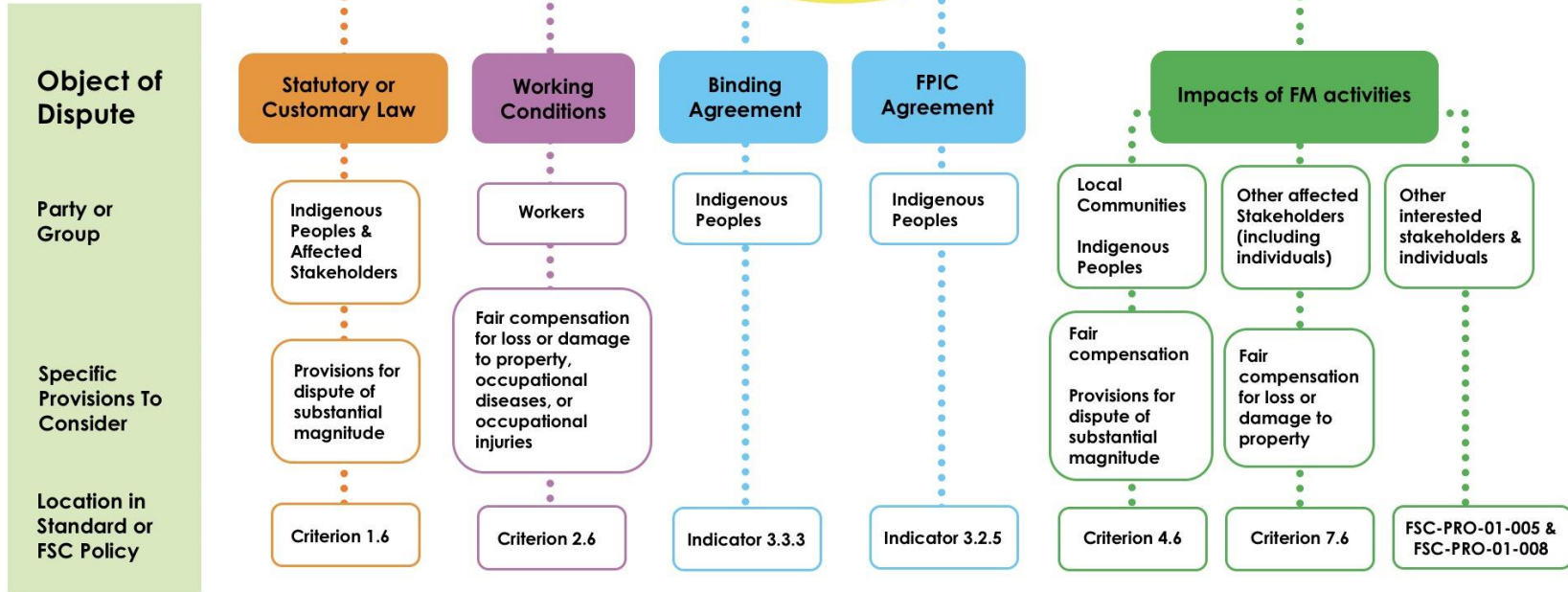
### **Disputes\* Beyond the Control of The Organization\***

It is recognized that *The Organization\** may not have the control over statutory or *legal\** matters or they may not be directly involved in the *dispute\** on the *Management Unit\**. Where the *dispute\** is between a complainant and another party, *The Organization\** should work within its *sphere of influence\** to encourage parties, where appropriate, to work together to resolve the *dispute\**.

### **FSC Procedures to Process Disputes\* and Appeals**

Lastly, FSC has its own dispute resolution system and procedures for processing *disputes\** and appeals (see FSC-PRO-01-005 and FSC-PRO-01-008). Certifying bodies also have dispute resolution systems in place for addressing concerns related to conformance to FSC standards. These are available to any *stakeholder\** or interested party to enact. *Stakeholders\** or interested parties are encouraged to first attempt to bring the issue forward to *The Organization\** for resolution prior to enacting FSC's or the certifying body's dispute resolution system.

# DISPUTE RESOLUTION PROCESS



## Annex F: Culturally Appropriate\* Engagement\*

Throughout the Standard, it is required to engage with various parties in a *culturally appropriate\** way. *The Organization\** should develop a methodology to implement *culturally appropriate\** approaches for *engagement\**. This Annex intends to give some guidance to facilitate the implementation of *engagement\** approaches that will foster the efficient involvement of specific groups.

The level of *engagement\** required and the *culturally appropriate\** approaches used can vary depending on the intended group and the context. Good and efficient *engagement\** involves the consideration of the following:

### A) Level of engagement\*

Different levels of *engagement\** exist. They include the following:

- **Inform:** To provide information primarily in one direction, with limited opportunity for dialogue.
- **Consult:** To obtain feedback on analysis, alternatives and/or decision.
- **Involve:** To work directly, throughout the process, to ensure that intended group issues and concerns are consistently understood and considered.
- **Collaborate:** To partner with the intended group in each aspect of the decision including the development of alternatives and the identification of the preferred solution.
- **Empower:** To place final decision-making in the authority of the intended group.

The level of *engagement\** may be variable depending on the intended group, the rights and responsibilities of the group and the level of impact of the activity on the intended group. In the Standard, the level of *engagement\** is also partly defined by the specific required action of the Standard, such as *inform, develop, etc., as described in the Indicator\**.

### B) Culturally appropriate\* approach:

The approach can be adapted to the level of *engagement\** required and adjusted to meet the needs of the intended group, as appropriate.

A *culturally appropriate\** approach should consider, but not restricted to, the elements listed below.

#### 1) Cultural difference/ attitude:

Some cultural differences are identified and the state of the actual relationship is assessed to determine:

- a) Preferences for direct or indirect negotiation;
- b) Attitude toward authority;
- c) Attitudes toward competition, cooperation and conflicts;
- d) Status of the current relationship and existing level of trust;
- e) Presence of disillusionment on experience;
- f) Lack of consultation or consultation fatigue;
- g) Ways of understanding and interpreting the world.

**2) Representation:**

- Representatives are identified for each activity in which *engagement\** is required, including (where appropriate) local institutions, organizations and authorities.
- Groups are equally represented and included.

**3) Communication:**

Meaningful communication between parties includes:

- a) Mechanisms for how information is exchanged;
- b) Different methods for cross-cultural communication including how information is presented;
- c) Sensitivities in the use of jargon;
- d) Shared level of understanding of the language used to communicate forest management planning and certification processes (written and spoken).
- e) Utilization of a language spoken/understood by the group.

**4) Documentation:**

- Outcomes and agreements are recorded and shared with approval sought on the content and intended use of the records.
- The way outcomes and agreements are shared both internally and externally should be agreed to in advance.

**5) Timeframe:**

- Timeframe for the *engagement\** is determined and allows adequate involvement.
- Availability of participants is considered.

**6) Capacity:**

- Consideration is given to the capacity and required resources necessary to facilitate an appropriate level of *engagement\**, including access to appropriate technology and the level of knowledge of the affected community.

**7) Decision making:**

- Approach for making decisions, including consideration of direct or indirect negotiation, is determined.

## Annex G: Caribou in the Standard

Caribou are recognized as an important species in Canada because of the social significance attached to their continued existence, their status as a hallmark *species at risk*\* and the fact that their presence in a *forest*\* can be an indication of *ecosystem integrity*\*. For these reasons, special attention has been paid to caribou in this Standard, and Indicator 6.4.5 is devoted entirely to management of *habitat*\* for boreal woodland caribou.

### Caribou Taxonomy

All of Canada's caribou - from woodland caribou in the boreal forest to the vast migratory herds of the tundra - belong to a single species, *Rangifer tarandus*. However, after that basic distinction, the taxonomy and language used to describe subdivisions within the species become complex. This is due in large part to the continuing evolution of our understanding of caribou ecology, and to some extent, the burden of language used over the years to describe caribou. The following terms are used to describe subdivisions within the species: subspecies, migratory patterns, ecotypes, designatable units, population groups, populations, subpopulations, ranges, herds, and probably others. There is common distinction made between mountain and boreal caribou, referred to here as different ecotypes of woodland caribou.

Mountain caribou, which are divided into northern and southern populations, are found in western Canada. Boreal caribou are found throughout the northern boreal forests. Forest management occurs in the areas occupied by both ecotypes and so it is appropriate that both enter discussions related to the FSC Standard. Mountain caribou are addressed in the last portion of this Annex.

The preferred means of addressing the *Indicator*\* is to manage caribou *habitat*\* according to a SARA-compliant *range plan*\* prepared and implemented in a manner consistent with the content, measures and *objectives*\* in the Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou (ECCC 2016). However, given that it may be a while before such *range plans*\* exist in all areas of the boreal forest inhabited by caribou, the *Indicator*\* presents two options for achieving conformance in circumstances where a SARA-compliant *range plan*\* does not yet exist. The first option is to manage according the requirements of Table 6.4.5, and the second is to implement other approaches developed through an *engagement*\* process, that is still consistent with the Range Plan Guidance requirements.

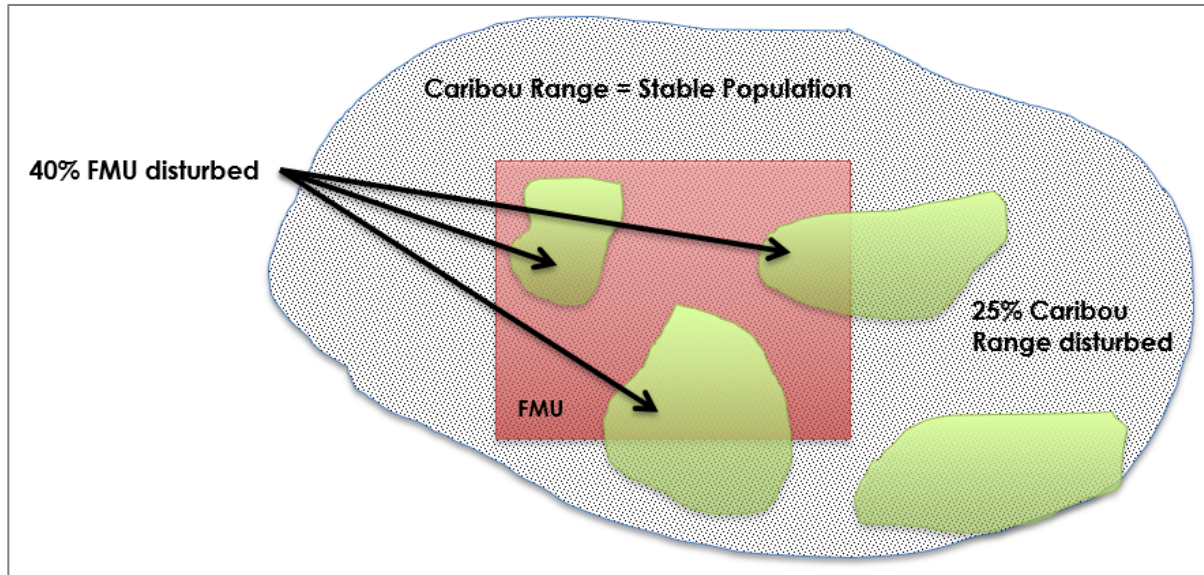
It is possible that management following the requirements of Table 6.4.5 will be implemented in *forests*\* across the country until a SARA-compliant *range plan*\* has been developed and is being implemented. Although Table 6.4.5 is detailed, following its requirements involves a relatively simple application of a *risk*\* management approach to managing caribou *habitat*\*. Many of the requirements are based on the approach put forward in the Federal Recovery Strategy for the boreal population of woodland caribou (Environment Canada, 2012) regarding the identification and effective *protection*\* of *critical habitat*\*. The key supporting documents for the Federal Recovery Strategy are Environment Canada's scientific review and assessment of *critical habitat*\* (Environment Canada, 2008; Environment Canada, 2011) that provided empirical evidence of a strong negative correlation between the extent of disturbance within *caribou ranges*\* and recruitment into the population.

### Examples of Implementation of Table 6.4.5

There are two overlapping spatial components to Table 6.4.5:

1. The cumulative level of disturbance within *caribou ranges\**, and
2. The cumulative level of disturbance within the portions of *Forest Management Units\** that overlap *caribou ranges\**.

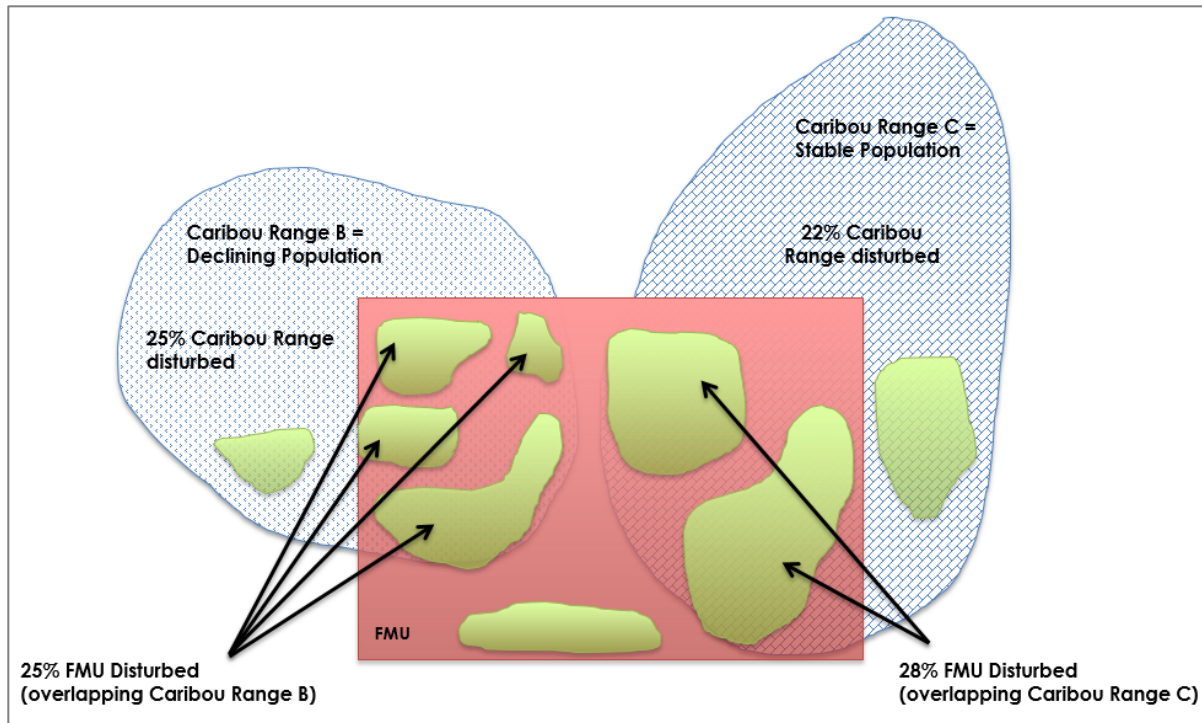
Because of the number of ways in which *caribou ranges\** and *Forest Management Units\** may overlap, some complexity may arise in the application of the requirements related to Table 6.4.5 in different circumstances. Figures 1 through 3 provide examples of the requirements in different situations:



**Figure 1:** Example of Indicator\* requirements with a stable population.

In Figure 1, a single *Forest Management Unit\** with 40% disturbance is completely enveloped by a *caribou range\**. The disturbed area in the range is 25%. Given that the caribou population status is stable, requirements 2, and 4 (Cell D) in Table 6.4.5 apply.

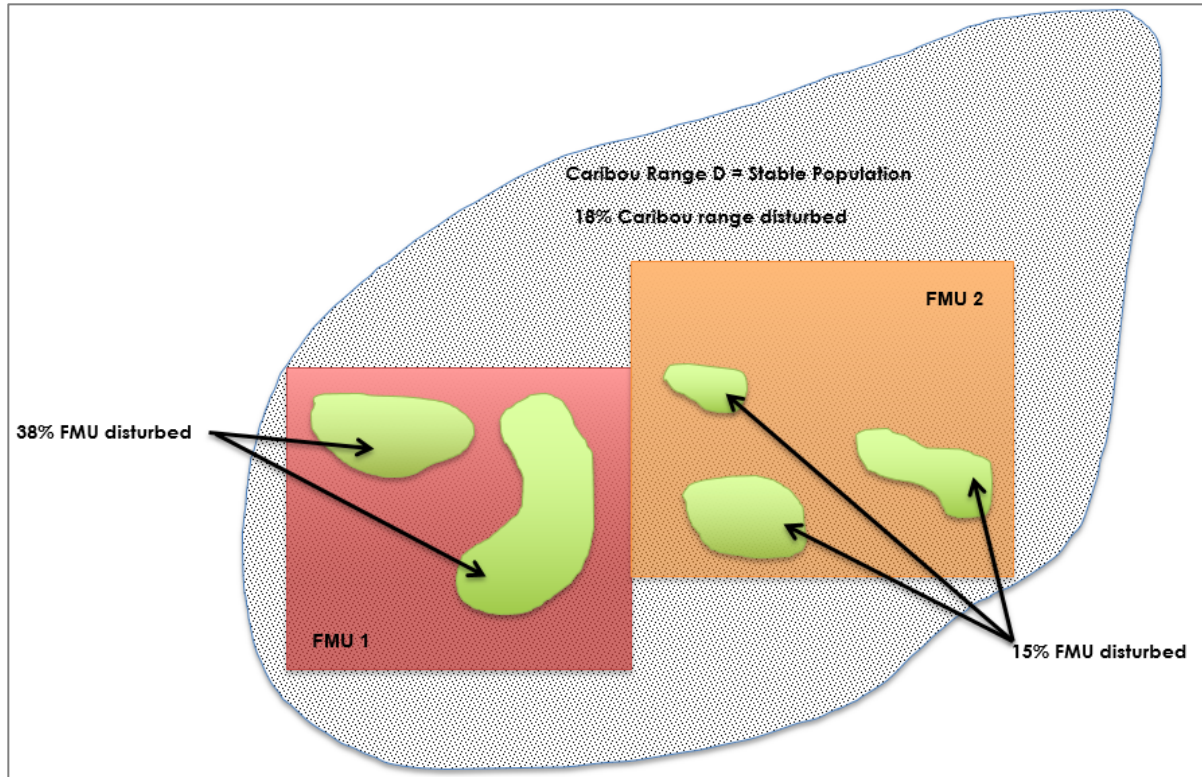




**Figure 2:** Example of Indicator\* requirements in a complex situation: One FMU within two ranges

Figure 2 presents a situation in which one *Forest Management Unit*\* overlaps with portions of two *caribou ranges*\*. Because the caribou population in Caribou Range B is in decline, and the level of disturbance in the range is moderate, between 20 and 35%, requirements 2,3,5, and 6 (Cell I) associated with Table 6.4.5 apply to that portion of the FMU that overlaps with Range B.

In Caribou Range C, the proportion of area disturbed is moderate (22%). The proportion of the *Forest Management Unit*\* disturbed in the overlapping area is 28% and the caribou population is stable. Therefore, requirements 1 and 3 (Cell C) of Table 6.4.5 apply to the portion of the FMU that overlaps with Range C.



**Figure 3.** Example of Indicator\* requirements in a complex situation: Two FMUs exist within a single caribou range\*.

In Figure 3, the proportion of the *caribou range\** that is disturbed is 18% and the caribou population is stable. With 38% of *Forest Management Unit\** 1 disturbed, requirement 2 (Cell B) associated with Table 6.4.5 applies to FMU 1. With only 15% of *Forest Management Unit\** 2 disturbed, requirement 1 (Cell A) applies to that FMU.

### **Caribou and Landscape\* Management**

Important issues in managing caribou *habitat\**, and the *habitat\** of other wide-range species are also addressed in components of other *Indicators\** in the Standard. Most of these are in Criterion 6.8, which addresses *landscape\** management through *Indicators\** related to:

- Management of *forest types\** and age classes (Indicators 6.8.1 and 6.8.2);
- Management of forest patches (Indicators 6.8.3 and 6.8.4);
- Maintenance and *restoration\** of *connectivity\** (Indicator 6.8.5);
- Access management (Indicator 6.8.6);
- Coordinating *landscape\* management activities\** with adjoining lands (Indicator 6.8.7).

The combination of Indicators 6.8.1 to 6.8.5 is intended to result in contiguous areas of *forest\** that provide for *habitat\* connectivity\**. Simple corridors of relatively unbroken *forest\** through a disturbed matrix do not suffice in providing *connectivity\** because caribou do not consistently travel along the same pathway. Therefore, broad expanses of contiguous *habitat\** are needed to provide *connectivity\**.

Access management, as addressed in Indicator 6.8.6, is a critical component of managing the quality of *forests\** for caribou. Impacts from access result in:

- Fragmentation of forest communities, degrading the *connectivity\** of those communities;
- Creation of barriers for movement of caribou and other sensitive wildlife;
- Provision of access corridors for predators, which may increase predation rates;
- Facilitation of intentional or accidental harvest; and
- Creation of additional development, which further degrades *habitat\** quality.

Indicator 6.8.6 includes requirements to manage *roads\** through all stages of their life cycle, including development, use and maintenance, *abandonment\** and reclamation.

Caribou and other wide-ranging species use *forests\** at *scales\** that transcend the size of *Forest Management Units\**. This poses a significant challenge for managers of certified *forests\** as the fate of caribou and other wide-ranging species on their *forest\** lands is affected by activities undertaken and decisions made beyond the boundaries of their *forests\**. Indicator 6.8.7 attempts to address this problem by requiring that The *Organization\** work within their *sphere of influence\** to facilitate *landscape\*-scale* management.

### **What about Mountain Caribou?**

Indicator 6.4.5 specifically addresses boreal caribou, and so it is *reasonable\** to ask why comparable attention is not provided for the mountain caribou ecotype of woodland caribou. The answer is that the ecology of mountain caribou is more complex, with more unknowns. A calibrated relationship between the extent of *cumulative disturbance\** and caribou recruitment, which provides the basis for the Federal Recovery Strategy for boreal caribou and which provides the basis for a 'neat' *Indicator\** for boreal caribou does not exist for mountain caribou.

Mountain caribou are divided into two types: northern and southern, with more than 70 ranges, or herds, for both types (and 3 population groups of southern mountain caribou). There are substantial differences between the population groups and herds in their patterns of altitudinal migration, use of high-altitude alpine *habitats\** and low-altitude forest *habitat\**. Matrix habitat, which provides refuge from predation, is recognized as a key component of their ecology particularly for southern mountain caribou, and is recognized as *critical habitat\** in the Federal Recovery Strategy for that population (Environment Canada 2014). Given this complexity, it was impractical to provide relatively precise direction for managing mountain caribou in a single *Indicator\**, or to add it to the direction for boreal caribou that exists in Indicator 6.4.5. However, this does not mean that *protection\** for mountain caribou is absent from the Standard. There are several *Indicators\** that address ecological values and management actions that are important in the stewardship of mountain caribou - and other *species at risk\** - including the following:

- Indicator 6.4.2 addresses planning for *species at risk\**;
- Indicators 6.4.3 and 6.4.4 address implementation of plans and use of a *precautionary approach\**;
- Indicators 6.8.3 and 6.8.4 address management of forest patches;
- Indicator 6.8.5 addresses maintenance of *connectivity\**; and
- Indicator 6.8.6 addresses access management.

In addition, mountain caribou should be designated as a *High Conservation Value\** due to its status as a *species at risk\**, and so the requirements of Principle 9 will apply.

## Annex H: Interim Indicators

### NOTE

For a certificate holder previously certified under one of the Canadian regional FSC Standards (see conditions in Section 1 below), some *Indicators\** in Principle 6 of this Standard may not be achievable within the normal one-year schedule required for conformance (as per the effective date of the Standard). These *Indicators\** address challenging topics that may involve multi-year processes including consultation with *stakeholders\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**, detailed analytical efforts, and shifts from previous management practices. In recognition of this, interim indicators have been identified for several *Indicators\** to provide additional time, beyond the normal conformance schedule, to achieve initial conformance.

Interim indicators, based on equivalent *Indicators\** from FSC Canada's previous regional standards, are provided for landscape-related requirements (new Standard Indicators 6.1.4 and 6.8.1-6.8.4), and *Indicators\** associated with the *Conservation Areas Network\** (i.e. Criterion 6.5).

### 1. Implementation Approach and Schedule for Conformance

The following points identify key aspects of the approach and schedule for conformance for interim indicators:

#### Applicability and Timelines for Interim Indicators:

- Interim indicators apply only to *The Organizations\** that are FSC-certified prior to the effective date of this Standard.
- Interim indicators are in effect until the *achievement date\** which is the date when *The Organization\** must demonstrate conformance to the Standard *Indicator\**. At this time the validity of the interim indicator expires.
- The *achievement date\** is either the second or third evaluation under the new Standard, after the effective date. The evaluation in this context refers to a re-certification assessment or annual surveillance audit that would assess conformance to the new Standard.
- The first evaluation of the new Standard after the effective date is considered as year one for the use of the interim indicators.
- Where the conformance to requirements of an interim indicator is not demonstrated within the prescribed timeline, a non-conformance will be identified.
- Where a new Standard *Indicator\** is not fully met by the *achievement date\**, a non-conformance will be identified.
- FSC Canada's previous regional standard requirements expire 12 months after the new Standard's effective date. Only the *Indicators\** specified in this Annex (applicable Standard in Section 4 below) remain valid until their *achievement date\**, as indicated in Table H-1 and H-2.
- Interim indicators shall be applied following FSC's normative documents related to assurance.

Interim indicators are provided in Tables H-1 and H-2 below.

## 2. Interim Indicators – Landscape Requirements

Table H-1. Interim Indicators (Landscape)

Standard Indicator*	Achievement date* of the Standard Indicator*	Interim Indicator
Indicators 6.1.4, 6.8.1, 6.8.2, 6.8.3 and 6.8.4 as detailed below.	Third Evaluation* (the certificate holder remains in conformance with the current regional standard until new Standard indicators are met).	<p><b>6.1.0</b> Conformance with the following Indicators* is maintained:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Boreal Standard: Indicators 6.1.5, 6.1.6, 6.3.4, 6.3.5, 6.3.6, 6.3.12</li> <li>• GLSL Standard: Indicators 6.1.3, 6.1.7, 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.3.3</li> <li>• BC Standard: 6.1.2, 6.1.7, 6.3.7, 6.3.8, 6.3.10</li> <li>• Maritime Standard: 6.3.1, 6.3.3, 6.3.7</li> </ul> <p>See section 4 below.</p>
<p><b>6.1.4</b> An assessment of the <i>range of natural variation*</i> (RONV*) of the forest* is completed. If sufficient data are not available to complete a RONV* assessment, an assessment of the <i>pre-industrial condition*</i> (PIC*) is completed. The RONV* or PIC* analysis includes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. An assessment of the natural range of the amount of each forest type*;</li> <li>2. An assessment of the natural range of forest types* by age class; and</li> <li>3. An assessment of the natural range of disturbance sizes and sizes of post-disturbance remnant patches.</li> </ol>	Second Evaluation	<p><b>6.1.4i</b> An analytical plan has been prepared, data have been collated and analyses have commenced to assess the <i>range of natural variation*</i> or <i>pre-industrial condition*</i> as identified in Indicator 6.1.4.</p>
<p><b>6.8.1</b> Based on the analyses undertaken for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, targets are identified for the distribution of forest types* and age classes of forest types* that are intended to maintain, restore*, or enhance the condition of the forest* appropriate to the regional context.</p> <p>Targets may take anticipated impacts of climate change into account provided they are based on <i>best available information*</i>.</p> <p>Target age-class* distributions represent the full range of natural forest* ages such that old forest* classes are incorporated into the targets.</p>	Second Evaluation	<p><b>6.8.1i</b> In conjunction with efforts related to Indicator 6.1.4i, efforts are underway to identify targets for the distribution of forest types* and age classes of forest types* to maintain, restore*, or enhance the condition of the forest*, appropriate to the regional context.</p>
<p><b>6.8.2</b> Measures are being implemented to achieve the targets for distributions of forest types* and age classes of forest types* identified in Indicator 6.8.1.</p>	Third Evaluation	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this indicator is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.8.1.
<p><b>6.8.3</b> Based on the analyses undertaken for Indicators 6.1.3 and 6.1.4, targets are identified for the size</p>	Second Evaluation	<p><b>6.8.3i</b> In conjunction with efforts related to Indicator 6.1.4i, efforts are underway to identify targets for the size distribution</p>

Standard Indicator*	Achievement date* of the Standard Indicator*	Interim Indicator
<p>distribution of forest patches to maintain, <i>restore*</i>, or enhance the condition of the <i>forest*</i> as appropriate to the regional context.</p> <p>The targets also take into account the needs of species at <i>risk*</i> that require large areas of contiguous habitat*.</p>		<p>of forest patches to maintain <i>restore*</i>, or enhance the condition of the <i>forest*</i>, appropriate to the regional context.</p>
<p><b>6.8.4</b> Measures are being implemented to achieve the targets for forest patch sizes, identified in Indicator 6.8.3. These include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Maintain contiguous blocks of <i>forest*</i> that are of natural-disturbance origin;</li> <li>2. Aggregate existing and planned disturbances as a means of creating and maintaining large contiguous blocks; and</li> <li>3. Minimize the extent of <i>roads*</i> and other linear disturbances in the contiguous blocks, including through removal and reclamation.</li> </ol>	<p>Third Evaluation</p>	<p>None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.8.3.</p>

### 3. Interim Indicators for Criterion 6.5

Table H-2. Interim Indicators for Criterion 6.5.

Standard Indicator*	Achievement date* of the Standard Indicator*	Interim Indicator		
<p>All <i>Indicators*</i> in Criterion 6.5 as detailed below.</p>	<p>Third Evaluation (the certificate holder remains in conformance with the current regional standard until new Standard indicators are met).</p>	<p><b>6.5.0</b> Conformance with the <i>Indicators*</i> of Criterion 6.4 of the relevant Canadian regional FSC Standard is maintained.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Intent Box</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> <p>The relevant Canadian regional FSC Standard is either the National Boreal Standard, the British Columbia Standard, the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Standard, or the Maritime Standard. See section 4 below.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Intent Box	<p>The relevant Canadian regional FSC Standard is either the National Boreal Standard, the British Columbia Standard, the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Standard, or the Maritime Standard. See section 4 below.</p>
Intent Box				
<p>The relevant Canadian regional FSC Standard is either the National Boreal Standard, the British Columbia Standard, the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Standard, or the Maritime Standard. See section 4 below.</p>				
<p><b>6.5.1</b> For <i>forests*</i> managed on public lands, an efficient process is used to <i>engage* Indigenous Peoples*</i> whose traditional territory overlaps the <i>Management Unit*</i> and self-identified <i>interested and affected stakeholders*</i>, regarding the identification and management of <i>designated conservation lands*</i>.</p>	<p>Second Evaluation</p>	<p><b>6.5.1i</b> For <i>forests*</i> managed on public lands, <i>Indigenous Peoples*</i> whose traditional territory overlaps the <i>Management Unit*</i> and self-identified <i>interested and affected stakeholders*</i> are <i>engaged*</i> in discussions to develop a mechanism to achieve <i>consensus*</i> on the identification of <i>designated conservation lands*</i>.</p>		

Standard Indicator*	Achievement date* of the Standard Indicator*	Interim Indicator		
The process includes the development of a mechanism to achieve <i>consensus*</i> on the identified <i>designated conservation lands*</i> .				
<p><b>6.5.2</b> Using <i>best available information*</i>, an analysis is used to identify potential gaps in the completeness of the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> in the <i>Management Unit*</i>. Elements considered for inclusion in the gap analysis address <i>enduring features*</i>, representation of <i>native ecosystems*</i>, <i>landscape* connectivity*</i>, <i>High Conservation Values*</i> and <i>High Conservation Value areas*</i>.</p> <p>The analysis uses inputs from the entire <i>area of ecological influence*</i>.</p> <p>The results of the gap analysis are mapped.</p>	Second Evaluation	<p><b>6.5.2i</b> Analyses to identify gaps in the completeness of the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> of the <i>Management Unit*</i> have been initiated.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Intent Box</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Initiation of analyses could entail identification of the <i>area of ecological influence*</i>, obtaining data on the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> within the <i>area of ecological influence*</i>, identification of elements for use in the analyses, and identifying appropriate analytical methods.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Intent Box	Initiation of analyses could entail identification of the <i>area of ecological influence*</i> , obtaining data on the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> within the <i>area of ecological influence*</i> , identification of elements for use in the analyses, and identifying appropriate analytical methods.
Intent Box				
Initiation of analyses could entail identification of the <i>area of ecological influence*</i> , obtaining data on the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> within the <i>area of ecological influence*</i> , identification of elements for use in the analyses, and identifying appropriate analytical methods.				
<p><b>6.5.3</b> A <i>peer review*</i> of the gap analysis is completed by one or more <i>independent experts*</i>.</p>	Third Evaluation	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.5.2.		
<p><b>6.5.4</b> For <i>forests*</i> managed on public land, the gap analysis and <i>peer review*</i> are made <i>publicly available*</i>, including in electronic format.</p>	Third Evaluation	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.5.2.		
<p><b>6.5.5</b> Areas that address <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> gaps are identified as <i>designated conservation lands*</i> or <i>secondary conservation lands*</i>.</p>	Third Evaluation	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.5.2.		
<p><b>6.5.6</b> <i>Designated conservation lands*</i> and <i>secondary conservation lands*</i> are of sufficient size to ensure the values they are intended to address are effectively protected based on a <i>precautionary approach*</i>.</p>	Third Evaluation	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.5.2.		
<p><b>6.5.7</b> The <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> comprises a minimum of 10% of the area of the <i>Management Unit*</i>. The extent of the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> on the <i>Management Unit*</i> is identified by considering:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relative extent of the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> in the <i>area of ecological influence*</i></li> <li>2. Contribution of the <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> to the attainment of regional, provincial, national and international (e.g. Aichi biodiversity targets) <i>conservation*</i> and <i>protected area*</i> targets;</li> </ol>	Third Evaluation	<p><b>6.5.7i</b> Evidence is provided to demonstrate how each of the numbered points in Indicator 6.5.7 is being, or will be addressed in identifying the total proposed area of the <i>Conservation Area Network*</i>.</p>		

Standard Indicator*	Achievement date* of the Standard Indicator*	Interim Indicator
<p>3. Best available scientific information and research regarding appropriate <i>conservation*</i> targets;</p> <p>4. Previous contributions of <i>The Organization*</i> to <i>Conservation Areas Network*</i> on lands that were formerly within the <i>Management Unit*</i>; and</p> <p>5. Socio-economic considerations (e.g. implications for wood availability and harvest levels).</p> <p>Evidence is provided to validate any claim of the existence of <i>protected areas*</i> that were formerly within the <i>Management Unit*</i></p>		
<p><b>6.5.8</b> For <i>forests*</i> managed on public land, <i>consensus*</i> is achieved on the identification of <i>designated conservation lands*</i> through implementation of the process identified in Indicator 6.5.1.</p>	Third Evaluation	<b>6.5.8i</b> Discussions intended to achieve consensus on the identification of designated conservation lands through the implementation of Indicator 6.5.1 have been initiated.
<p><b>6.5.9</b> Forest operations including harvesting, <i>silviculture*</i>, and <i>road*</i> building, are not undertaken by <i>The Organization*</i> within <i>designated conservation lands*</i> except when confirmed by <i>independent expert*</i> opinion as appropriate to achieve <i>objectives*</i> associated with <i>restoration*</i> or maintenance of <i>natural conditions*</i>.</p>	Third Evaluation	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.5.5.
<p><b>6.5.10</b> For <i>forests*</i> managed on private land, forest operations are undertaken on <i>secondary conservation lands*</i> only when they maintain the ecological and cultural qualities that are the basis of the lands' designation.</p>	Third Evaluation	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of Indicator 6.5.5.
<p><b>6.5.11</b> For <i>forests*</i> managed on public land, <i>The Organization*</i> works within its <i>sphere of influence*</i> to achieve the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Move <i>designated conservation lands*</i> to full <i>legal*</i> regulated status;</li> <li>2. Recognition of <i>designated conservation lands*</i> in <i>management plans*</i> and other relevant documents; and</li> <li>3. Avoid harvesting, <i>road*</i> building and other operations proposed by other <i>tenure*</i> holders that are not consistent with <i>conservation* objectives*</i> of <i>designated conservation lands*</i>.</li> </ol>	Third Evaluation	<b>6.5.11i</b> <i>Overlapping tenure holders*</i> , neighbouring <i>Forest Management Units*</i> and relevant government agencies are informed of this Standard's objectives related to <i>Conservation Area Networks*</i> , efforts underway by <i>The Organization*</i> and the roles and opportunities for others to assist in reaching the goals.



Standard Indicator*	Achievement date* of the Standard Indicator*	Interim Indicator
<p><i>Free, Prior and Informed Consent*</i> is obtained prior to efforts to work within <i>The Organization's* sphere of influence*</i> to achieve regulated status for <i>designated conservation lands*</i> that overlap <i>Indigenous Peoples'*</i> traditional territories (per Criterion 3.2).</p>		
<p><b>6.5.12</b> The completed gap analysis is reviewed at least every five years, and updated if necessary, based on availability of new information or advances in gap analysis methodology.</p> <p>If substantial changes to the gap analysis occur as a result of the update, a <i>peer review*</i> is undertaken.</p>	Third Evaluation.	None – No interim indicator is possible/ necessary as this <i>Indicator*</i> is dependent upon completion of all the other <i>Indicators*</i> in this <i>Criterion*</i> .

#### 4. Indicators\* from previous Canadian regional FSC Standards

##### National Boreal Standard

No.	Standard Indicator*
6.1.5	<p>Appropriate to the scale of the operation and available information, the <b>pre-industrial forest</b> condition and disturbance regime has been characterized, and includes at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ A description of major disturbance factors, including discussion of their distribution and frequency; assessment of the size and extent of residual patches within fire boundaries, and description of stand structure types and natural landscape patterns (e.g., <b>patch sizes</b> of disturbances as well as forest stands) associated with the various types of disturbance;</li> <li>▪ Estimated mean distribution and/or composition of tree species, forest cover types and/or forest units, as appropriate;</li> <li>▪ Estimated mean and ranges of stand-replacing disturbance intervals by landscape unit and/or forest zone; and where applicable, by forest unit, forest ecosystem or forest cover type;</li> <li>▪ A calculation of average fire return interval determined through fire history mapping and assessment of time since disturbance, including ground truthing; and</li> <li>▪ Estimated typical age class distribution, including full characterization of the age range of old forests, by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Landscape units and/or forest zones</li> <li>• Forest cover types or forest units, and,</li> <li>• Forest ecosystems or generalized landforms</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
6.1.6	The pre-industrial condition (PIC) analysis is subject to peer review and available for public review.
6.3.4	Forest units and communities that are significantly under-represented relative to the pre-industrial composition (as per analysis from 6.1.5) are being increased in abundance over the longer term. In the near term, at a minimum, their abundance is being maintained with the intent to increase it over the longer term.
6.3.5	Management strategies maintain average landscape and/or regional distributions or amounts of the full age-range of old forests identified through the PIC analysis consistent with the requirements of 6.1.5, allowing for a 25% departure from the estimated mean of older forests - in recognition of the range of natural variability, practical constraints and competing

	objectives. In the absence of a credible estimate of the mean, a minimum of 20% of old forest will be retained. If socio-economic concerns constrain the application of this indicator in regions with exceptionally high natural proportions of older forests (e.g., greater than 60%), there may be up to a maximum of a 50% departure from the mean, provided that the applicant demonstrates broad consensus.
6.3.6	Targets for landscape patterns (disturbed and undisturbed patches) have been set, based upon the characterization of the pre-industrial forest. Management is returning the forest landscape pattern to one consistent with the pre-industrial forest. This approach is consistent with maintaining natural levels of core habitat and <b>connectivity</b> throughout the long-term planning horizon.
6.3.12	Large areas (thousands of hectares) of contiguous core forest habitat, representative of the habitat types of the landbase, exist and are maintained in the management unit. The proportion of the management unit in large areas of core is guided by the outcome of the pre-industrial forest condition analysis and by a target of maintaining at least 20% of the forest management unit. Large cores consist primarily of mature and old forest, but may also contain inclusions of up to 5% recently disturbed forest. To the greatest extent possible within the current forest condition, large cores do not contain roads and other linear disturbances. In planning future cores, the applicant chooses areas with a high probability of achieving the desired condition (e.g., areas likely to be in a contiguous, roadless condition) and is working within its sphere of influence to achieve this condition (e.g., access management, decommissioning roads, bridge removal, etc.).
6.4.1	The applicant completes (or makes use of) a peer-reviewed scientific <b>gap analysis</b> to address the need for protected areas in the eco-region(s) and <b>ecodistrict(s)</b> in which the forest is situated. The applicant uses the gap analysis and elements including representation, connectivity, intactness, age of the forest, rare ecosystems and other HCVF attributes to identify the location and extent of additional protected areas.
6.4.2	The applicant designs, identifies and contributes candidate protected areas that make a maximum contribution to filling gaps in the protected areas system (per 6.4.1) based on the relative responsibility of the applicant. The level of the applicant's responsibility is determined by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The level of representation of enduring features within the forest; and,</li> <li>• The regional significance of the conservation values (e.g., quality or rarity).</li> </ul>
6.4.3	The applicant works cooperatively with interested parties (e.g., Environmental-NGOs, Indigenous People) in the analysis of gaps and candidate protected areas.
6.4.4	Results of the candidate protected area identification process described in indicator 6.4.2 are mapped.
6.4.5	The applicant has documentation demonstrating support by interested parties (e.g. Environmental NGOs and Indigenous Peoples).
6.4.6	Forest operations including harvesting, silviculture and road building are not undertaken in protected areas or candidate protected areas.
6.4.7	The applicant is working within their sphere of influence to move candidate protected areas to full regulated protection as soon as possible.

### Great Lakes – St. Lawrence Draft Standard

No.	Standard Indicator*
6.1.3	The natural variability and historic local pattern of the forest in the region has been characterized, and includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- A description of major disturbance factors, including disturbance intervals;</li> <li>- Estimated mean distribution and/or composition of tree species, forest cover types and/or forest unit as appropriate;</li> <li>- Estimated typical age class distribution.</li> <li>- The assessment is reviewed by qualified specialists and available for public review.</li> </ul>

6.1.7	Benchmarks of current forest condition at the stand and landscape levels are in place to serve as references during impact assessment.
6.3.1	In consideration of the assessment results in 6.1, the manager has determined a long-term desired future forest condition that maintains, enhances or restores natural conditions in natural forests relating to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- diversity of forest types</li> <li>- diversity of successional stages</li> <li>- distribution of age classes, including old growth</li> <li>- diversity of forest structures (e.g. horizontal, vertical and pattern)</li> <li>- connectivity</li> <li>- levels of disturbances at the landscape level (e.g. watershed).</li> </ul>
6.3.2	Quantitative short to mid-term (e.g. 2-5 years) objectives have been set, using expert input, to maintain, enhance or restore natural conditions in natural forests.
6.3.3	Plans have been developed and are being implemented to achieve the objectives set out in 6.3.2.
6.4.1	The manager shall identify potential gaps in the representative completeness of protected areas in the appropriate ecological unit(s) (ecoregions, ecodistricts, natural regions) contained on the management unit, using the best available tools and information, such as but not necessarily limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- land cover gap analysis; and</li> <li>- enduring features gap analysis.</li> </ul>
6.4.2	Where there are identified gaps, the manager shall use the gap analysis and consideration of elements such as representativeness, connectivity, integrity, forest age, rare ecosystems, the results of the HCVF analysis in 9.1 and other available analyses to determine and map the location and size of candidate protected areas.
6.4.3	The manager shall engage and cooperate with interested parties (e.g. ENGOs, Aboriginal communities) and qualified experts in carrying out the gap analysis and identifying candidate protected areas.
6.4.4	General consensus is sought amongst interested parties on the conclusions of the gap analysis regarding the identification and contribution of candidate protected areas.
6.4.5	The owner/manager actively supports initiatives open to all interested parties, which may include government, industrial and private landowners, and non-government agencies to establish systems of protected areas in the region of the landholding.
6.4.6	The manager shall not undertake forest management activities, including harvesting, silviculture and road construction in designated protected areas.
6.4.7	The manager demonstrates voluntary deferral of forest management activities, including harvesting, silviculture and road construction in identified candidate protected areas. Forest management activities may occur in candidate protected areas where agreed to through the general consensus of interested parties.

### FSC Regional Certification Standard for British Columbia

No.	Standard Indicator*
6.1.2	The <b>manager</b> collects and/or assembles reconnaissance level inventory information appropriate for <b>landscape level</b> planning and completion of a <b>management plan</b> for the <b>management unit</b> as a whole, including at a minimum: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) <b>natural disturbance regime</b>;</li> <li>b) list of potentially occurring <b>native species</b> (including at a minimum indicator plants, <b>focal species</b>, and other species of concern); and,</li> <li>c) mapping of forest cover, BEC units to the <b>variant</b> level, hydrologic features, reconnaissance <b>terrain stability mapping</b>, cultural features, visual sensitivity, land use and other <b>tenures</b>.</li> </ol>
6.1.7	Based on the best available information, the <b>manager</b> prepares a written description of the estimated <b>range of natural variability</b> including reference to <b>ecosystem</b> conditions and

	<b>ecosystem functioning</b> (see Guidance Material on <b>RONV</b> ). This description serves as an environmental base case (i.e. benchmark or reference <b>ecosystem</b> conditions) against which to measure potential environmental changes or impacts resulting from proposed management activities.
6.3.7	Silvicultural treatments, including regeneration, maintain a diversity of tree species and stand types compatible with the <b>range of natural variability</b> at the <b>landscape level</b> .
6.3.8	<b>Silviculture</b> and stand management prescriptions contain objectives and measures for the maintenance and/or restoration of stand structure to conditions <b>compatible with the range of natural variability</b> at the stand and <b>landscape levels</b> . Structural components, including at a minimum canopy complexity, <b>live wildlife trees</b> , snags and <b>coarse woody debris</b> are maintained or restored to quantities and distributions that are <b>compatible with RONV</b> . (see Guidance on Applying <b>RONV</b> to Forest Management, with particular focus on Section 6.2, " <b>Natural Disturbance Regimes</b> ," for guidance on stand level retention and maintenance of other structural components).
6.3.10	<b>Forest management</b> maintains or restores a distribution of seral stages, patch sizes and interior habitat that are <b>compatible with the range of natural variability</b> .
6.4.1	A network of <b>protected reserves</b> is established at multiple scales and managed within the <b>management unit</b> (see also <i>Guidance Material – A companion document to the FSC Regional Standards for BC – Guidance on Planning</i> ). The reserve network: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) maintains key environmental values and options to reserve critical areas are not foreclosed by on-going operations;</li> <li>b) is delineated on maps, and where applicable, includes mapping of <b>dynamic reserves</b> and <b>dynamic reserve</b> replacement areas;</li> <li>c) has written objectives for each reserve area related to that area's contribution to maintaining or restoring <b>ecological integrity</b>; and,</li> <li>d) meets the applicable minimum percentage area for <b>ecosystem</b> representation by <b>BEC variant</b> within the <b>management unit</b>, as determined by Table P6 – 1 (see below).</li> </ul>
6.4.2	The design and management of the reserve network contributes to the maintenance and/or restoration of <b>ecological integrity</b> by including at a minimum, areas whose size and distribution are sufficient to meet the following objectives: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) includes representation of <b>ecosystem</b> variation within the <b>management unit</b> at a level more detailed than the <b>BEC variant</b>, using characteristics appropriate to the <b>management unit</b></li> <li>b) habitat requirements for naturally occurring species that are not provided for in a suitable condition in other parts of the <b>management unit</b>,</li> <li>c) <b>connectivity</b> at the landscape and regional levels,</li> <li>d) protection of rare and endangered <b>ecosystems</b> and <b>ecosystem</b> conditions that are or are predicted to be at risk (e.g., interior forest conditions, old seral conditions), and</li> <li>e) scientific reference areas.</li> </ul>
6.4.3	All <b>protected reserves</b> within <b>Natural Disturbance Types 1</b> and <b>2</b> are permanent designations with fixed locations. Where the <b>manager</b> has identified ecological benefits for management treatments that mimic natural disturbances in <b>NDTs 3</b> or <b>4</b> , up to a maximum of 50% of the area of <b>protected reserves</b> in those <b>NDTs</b> can be managed as <b>dynamic reserves</b> (a minimum of 50% must remain permanent reserves).
6.4.4	Management treatments in <b>dynamic reserves</b> that are intended to mimic stand-replacing natural disturbances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) are employed on a frequency (i.e. rotation age) that is at least 1.2 times the estimated average return interval for those disturbances;</li> <li>b) include stand level retention significantly above the estimated average natural retention levels for those disturbances;</li> <li>c) use natural regeneration; and</li> <li>d) allow for natural stand development.</li> </ul>
6.4.5	Management activities within <b>protected reserves</b> are limited to low impact activities compatible with the protected reserve objectives, except under the following circumstances:

	<p>a) harvesting activities only where they are necessary to restore or create habitat to meet the objectives of the protected reserve, or to mitigate conditions that interfere with achieving the reserve objectives, or</p> <p>b) road-building only where it is documented that it will contribute to the minimization of the overall environmental impacts within the <b>management unit</b> and will not jeopardize the purpose for which the reserve was designated.</p>
--	---

### Maritimes Standard

No.	Standard Indicator*
6.3.1	The present and projected silviculture, harvest and regeneration methods shall result in a mix of tree species, stand types, landscape ecology and stand structures that mimic the natural variability and historic local pattern of the Acadian Forest.
6.3.3	Silviculture practices result in age, diameter, species and height class distributions that are within the range of natural variability.
6.3.7	The owner/manager shall strive to approximate spatial patterns and distributions of forest communities representative of natural forest characteristics for the landscape level.
6.4.1	Existing ecosystems on the forest management unit are inventoried according to classification systems in use in the Province and documented on management plan maps.
6.4.2	Representative samples of ecosystems that are present on the management unit and underrepresented in protected areas on the landscape are designated in the management plan and on maps and protected in their natural state.
6.4.3	The owner/manager should actively support multi-stakeholder initiatives that include government, industrial and private landowners, and non-government agencies to establish systems of protected areas in the region of the landholding.

## Annex I: List of Contributors

**This Standard would not have been possible without the dedication and hard work of volunteers and contributors whose provided expertise and experience, and who provided comments on the various drafts of the Standard. FSC Canada thanks those listed below and many others who may not have been listed.**

### **FSC Canada Board of Directors:**

- Tyler Bellis, Council of the Haida Nation (2017-2018)
- Arnold Bercov, Public and Private Workers of Canada (2013-2017)
- Julee Boan, Ontario Nature (2016-2018)
- Pier-Olivier Boudreault, Société pour la nature et les Parcs du Canada (SNAP Quebec) (2015-2017)
- John Caluori, Unifor (2017-2020)
- John Cathro, Individual (2011-2016)
- Valérie Courtois, Individual (2011-2014)
- Elston Dzus, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (2016-2020)
- David Flood, Individual (2017-2019)
- Renaud Gagné, Unifor (2016)
- Catharine Grant, Individual (2017-2019)
- Satnam Manhas, Ecotrust Canada (2014-2016)
- Chris McDonell, Tembec Inc. (2011-2016)
- Chris Miller, Canadian Parks and Wilderness Society (2013-2015)
- Orrin Quinn, Ecotrust Canada (2011– 2013)
- Colin Richardson, Haida Nation (2016-2017)
- Lorraine Rekmans, Individual (2018-2020)
- Steven Sage, Kruger Products L.P. (2013-2015)
- Cameron Shiell, Public and Private Workers of Canada (2017-2019)
- Brenda St-Denis, Wolf Lake First Nation (2013-2017)
- Gerard Szaraz, Nature Quebec (2018-2020)
- Andrew Tremblay, Domtar Inc. (2015-2019)
- Bradley Young, National Aboriginal Forestry Association (2011-2016)

### **Standard Development Group (SDG):**

*The SDG was responsible for developing the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard of Canada with common Indicators\*. Through the transfer and adaptation of FSC International Generic Indicators (IGIs), Canadian specific SMART (Specific, Measurable, Attainable, Rational, Timebound) Indicators\* were developed.*

- Nicolas Blanchette, INCOS Strategies (QC) - Social Chamber (2017-ongoing)
- John Caluori, UNIFOR (QC) - Social Chamber (2016)
- Scott Davis, Eastern Ontario Model Forest (ON) - Social Chamber (2013-2016)
- Russell Diabo, Wolf Lake First Nation (QC/ON), shared seat - Aboriginal Chamber (2013-ongoing)
- Kevin Gillis, Mistik Management Ltd. (SK), shared seat - Aboriginal Chamber (2013-ongoing)
- André Gravel, Domtar Inc. (QC) - Economic Chamber (2017-ongoing)
- Satnam Manhas, Ecotrust Canada (BC), shared seat - Social Chamber (2013-2014)
- Chris McDonell, Tembec Inc. / Rayonier Advanced Materials (ON/QC) – Economic Chamber (2016-ongoing)
- Solange Nadeau, Natural Resources Canada (QC/NB) - Social Chamber (2013-ongoing)

- Dave Pearce, Wildlands league / CPAWS (ON) - Environment Chamber (2013-ongoing)
- M.A. (Peggy) Smith, Lakehead University (ON) - Aboriginal Chamber (2013-ongoing)
- Christopher J. Stagg, Canadian Forest Products Ltd. (BC) - Economic Chamber (2013-2016)
- Karen Tam Wu, Forest Ethics (BC) - Environmental Chamber (2013-2014)
- Guy Tremblay, Resolute Forest Products (QC) - Economic Chamber (2013-2017)
- Cliff Wallis, Alberta Wilderness Association (AB) - Environmental Chamber (2014-ongoing)

### Technical Expert Panels:

*Technical Expert Panels (TEPs) were created to assist in providing scientific, cultural and auditing expertise and technical input on critical topics to be considered when developing normative\* measures within this Standard. These topics were identified through early public outreach efforts and surveys.*

- Species at Risk\* (Caribou):
  - Elston Dzus, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
  - Christine Korol, Independent Consultant, formerly from Rainforest Alliance (ON)
  - Steve Morel, Mashteuiatsh's Environment Department (QC)
  - Justina Ray, Wildlife Conservation Society Canada (ON)
- Principles 6, 9 and 10 (as per new P&Cs): Ecological & Operational Consideration:
  - Tom Clark, Independent Consultant (ON) (P9 only)
  - Patrick Garneau, Tembec Inc. (QC)
  - Louis Imbeau, Université du Québec en Abitibi-Témiscamingue (QC)
  - Kevin Gillis, Mistik Management Ltd. (SK) (also SDG)
  - Dave Pearce, CPAWS, Wildlands League (ON) (also SDG)
  - Chris Ridley-Thomas, KPMG Performance Registrar Inc. (BC)
  - Kari Stuart-Smith, Canadian Forest Products Ltd. (BC)
- Principle 3: Aboriginal Rights: Free, Prior and Informed Consent\*:
  - Sandra Cardinal, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
  - Geneviève Labrecque, Tembec Inc. (QC)
  - Michel Mongeon, Independent Consultant (QC)
  - M.A. (Peggy) Smith, Lakehead University (ON) (also SDG)
  - Sara Teitelbaum, Independent Consultant (QC)
- Community and Stakeholder\* Rights:
  - Robert Booth<sup>14</sup>, Domtar Inc. (ON) (2013-2015)
  - Steve Munro, Westwind Forest Stewardship Inc. (ON) (2015)
  - Solange Nadeau, Natural Resources Canada, CFS (QC / NB) (also SDG)
  - Harry Nelson, University of British Columbia (BC)
  - Cindy Pearce, Mountain Labyrinths Consulting (BC)
- Scale, Intensity and Risk\* (SIR): small and low intensity managed forests (SLIMF):
  - Olivier Côté, Syndicat des producteurs forestiers du Sud du Québec (QC)
  - Kari Easthouse, Cape Breton Private Land Partnership / NSLFFPA (NS)
  - Erik Leslie, Harrop-Procter Community Co-operative (BC)
  - Simon Mitchell, Woodland Steward (NB)
  - Dave Puttock, SilvEcon Ltd. (ON)

---

<sup>14</sup> FSC Canada extends deep appreciation to Rob Booth for his active participation and long-term contribution to forest management and certification in Canada. He is warmly remembered and missed.

- Pesticides\*, Conversion and Invasive Species\*:
  - Brian Callaghan, Bureau Veritas Certification (ON)
  - Thom Erdle, University of New Brunswick (NB)
  - Will Martin, Rising Forest Management Consulting (NS)
  - Sandy Smith, University of Toronto (ON)
  - Conrad Yarmoloy, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
- HCV Framework Revision Sub-Committee:
  - Sophie Dallaire, Ministère des Forêts, de la Faune et des Parcs (QC)
  - Patrick Garneau, Tembec Inc. (QC)
  - Kevin Gillis, Mistik Management Ltd. (SK) (also SDG)
  - Marie-Eve Sigouin, Tembec Inc. (QC)
  - Kari Stuart-Smith, Canadian Forest Products Ltd. (BC)
- Intact Forest Landscape\* and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes Sub-Committee:
  - Elston Dzus, Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc. (AB)
  - Louis Imbeau, Université du Québec en Abitibi-Témiscamingue (QC)
  - Christine Korol, Independent Consultant (ON)
  - Geneviève Labrecque, Tembec Inc. (QC)
  - Dave Pearce, CPAWS, Wildlands League (ON) (also SDG)
  - Justina Ray, Wildlife Conservation Society Canada (ON)
  - M.A. (Peggy) Smith, Lakehead University (ON) (also SDG)

### **Standard Testing:**

*In total, 23 tests were conducted, including 2 field tests of the entire Standard and 21 desk/ scenario/field tests that explored key topics. The goal was to systematically and objectively evaluate the practicality and implementation of proposed Draft 2 Indicators\* by a Forest Management Enterprise.*

FSC Canada thanks those organizations who participated, from:

- Abitibi River Forest Management Inc.
- Alberta-Pacific Forest Industries Inc.
- AV Group NB
- Canadian Forest Products Ltd.
- Chantiers Chibougamau Ltée
- Domtar Inc.
- J.D. Irving, Limited
- Mistik Management Ltd.
- Nawiinginiima Forest Management Corporation
- Resolute Forest Products
- Tembec Inc.
- Timiskaming Forest Alliance Inc.

And the participation of the testing auditors:

- Mylène Rimbault, Rainforest Alliance
- Daniel Martin, Abies Consultants Inc.
- Ugo Lapointe, SmartCert
- Chris Ridley-Thomas, KPMG Performance Registrar Inc.

### **Consultants:**



- Mélodie Benoît-Lamarre, Traductions Hermès
- Tom Clark, CMC Ecological Consulting
- Meagan Joan Curtis, Independent Consultant
- Liana de Francesco, Independent Consultant
- Eric Forget, Nova Sylva
- Christine Korol, Independent Consultant
- Pamela Perreault, Independent Consultant
- Helena Rusak, Copy Editor Consultant
- Krystal Seedial, Consultant acting as Programs and Communications Coordinator
- Chris Wedeles, ArborVitae Environmental Services Ltd.

#### **FSC Canada staff**

- Bryce Denton, Financial Manager (2013-ongoing)
- François Dufresne, President (2013-ongoing)
- Elaine Marchand, Regional Manager, Eastern Canada (2013-ongoing)
- Monika Patel, Director of Programs & Communications (2013- ongoing)
- Vivian Peachey, Director of Standards (2013- ongoing)
- Orrin Quinn, Regional Manager, Western Canada (2013-2017)
- Elena Vissa, intern (2017)
- Josh Zangwill, Business Management Manager (2013-2017)

#### **Funders and main Partners**

- Columbia Forest Product
- Georgia Pacific
- Government of Quebec, Ministry of Forests, Wildlife and Parks
- Ivey Foundation
- Kimberley Clark
- Natural Resources Canada, Canadian Forest Service
- Procter & Gamble
- Quebec Forest Industry Council
- Toronto Dominion Bank
- World Wildlife Fund U.S.
- First Nations of Quebec and Labrador Sustainable Development Institute (FNQLSDI)
- National Aboriginal Forestry Association (NAFA)

#### **Stakeholder\* Engagement\***

*FSC Canada thanks everybody who participated during the many consultations, surveys and events.*

- Surveys:
  - Process design and identification of values important to *stakeholders\** (August 2012);
  - Strategic Direction Survey and Motion (February 2013);
  - Identification of Key Indicators (Spring-Summer 2013).
- Regional workshop on Forest Management Standards Revision Process (2013):
  - North Bay, ON on April 3-4: 19 participants (SFL certificate holders);
  - Stouffville, ON on June 19: 9 participants (SLIMF certificate holders);
  - Vancouver, BC on June 27: 13 participants;
  - Quebec City, QC on July 3: 13 participants (certificate holders);
  - Fredericton, NB on July 10, 2013: 26 participants (*stakeholders\**);

- Halifax, NS on July 11: 19 participants (*stakeholders\**);
  - Wendake, QC on July 18: 25 participants (FNQLSDI & Indigenous Peoples Expert Group);
  - Webinar in French on August 6: 12 participants;
  - Webinar in English on August 8: 5 participants.
- *Species at risk\** and caribou (2014):
  - Consultation period from September 21 to November 28, 2014: 18 participants;
  - Webinar on October 22: 52 participants.
- Forest Management Standard, Draft 1 (2015-2016):
  - Consultation from December 1, 2015 to February 2, 2016: 49 participants;
  - Information webinars:
    - English session on January 11, 2016: 48 participants;
    - French session on January 12, 2016: 33 participants.
  - Regional meetings:
    - Quebec session in Quebec City, QC, on January 14, 2016: 35 participants;
    - Industry-led session in North Bay, ON, on January 19-20, 2016: 30 participants;
    - Maritimes session in Amherst, NS on January 20, 2016: 19 participants;
    - Ontario webinar on January 22, 2016: 17 participants;
    - British Columbia webinar on January 26, 2016: 17 participants.
  - National Aboriginal Forestry Association Forum on April 14, 2016 - FSC Canada workshop on FSC Draft 1 National Standard Review and FSC Canada FPIC Guidance Development: 35 participants.
  - Topic oriented webinar on Free, Prior and Informed Consent on April 29, 2016: approximately 20 participants.
  - Impact analysis of the National Forest Management Standard (on IFL, ICL and caribou *Indicator\**) from July 11 to September 22, 2016: 4 participants.
- *Intact Forest Landscapes\** (IFL) and Indigenous Cultural Landscapes (ICL):
  - FSC Canada Annual General Assembly (AGM) on November 5, 2014 in Quebec City. A Panel Discussion on IFL and FSC certification: 42 participants.
  - IFL & ICL Cross-chamber Facilitated Strategic Discussion on May 28, 2015 in Vancouver: 19 participants.
  - FSC Canada AGM on November 5, 2015 in Vancouver. Intact Forest & Indigenous Cultural Landscapes Discussion: 45 participants.
  - IFL and ICL Discussion Paper – consultation from December 1<sup>st</sup>, 2015 to February 2<sup>nd</sup>, 2016: 7 participants.
  - NAFA National Forum on April 12-14, 2016: FPIC and Indigenous Forests: Landscape, Certification and Nationhood. 109 participants.
  - IFL Technical guidance & ICL Discussion Paper – consultation from December 6, 2016 to February 17, 2017: 11 participants.
  - Case study for IFL determination in Canada (2016): 4 participants.
  - FSC Canada AGM on November 3, 2016 in Ottawa – Intact Forest & Indigenous Landscapes Discussion: 50 participants.
  - FSC Canada AGM on June 28-29, 2017 in Montreal. FSC Forest Management Forum: 75 participants.
- Forest Management Standard, Draft 2, and *Free, Prior and Informed Consent Guidance* (2016-2017):
  - Consultation from November 24 1 2016 to February 17, 2017: 30 participants.

- Questions & Answers - Information webinars:
  - Two English sessions on February 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup>, 2017: 10 and 11 participants;
  - French session on February 3<sup>rd</sup>, 2017: 12 participants.
- Industry-led session in North Bay, ON, on January 24-25, 2017: 29 participants.
- FSC Canada AGM June 28-29, 2017 in Montreal. FSC Forest Management Forum: 75 participants.

## GLOSSARY

This Glossary includes internationally accepted definitions whenever possible. These sources include, for instance, the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO), the Convention on Biological Diversity (1992), the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) as well as definitions from online glossaries as provided on the websites of the World Conservation Union (IUCN), the International Labour Organization (ILO) and the Invasive Alien Species Programme of the Convention on Biological Diversity. When other sources have been used they are referenced accordingly.

The term 'based on' means that a definition was adapted from an existing definition as provided in an international source.

Words used in this Standard, if not defined in this Glossary or other *normative\** FSC documents, are used as defined in the Shorter Oxford English Dictionary or the Concise Oxford Dictionary.

---

**Achievement date:** The date at which *The Organization\** must demonstrate conformance to the Standard *Indicator\**, and the validity of the interim indicator expires.

**Adaptive management:** A systematic process of continually improving management policies and practices by learning from the outcomes of existing measures.

**(Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Affected stakeholder:** Any person, group of persons or entity that is or is likely to be subject to the effects of the activities of a *Management Unit\**. Examples include, but are not restricted to (for example in the case of downstream landowners), persons, groups of persons or entities located in the neighbourhood of the *Management Unit\**. The following are examples of affected stakeholders:

- *Local communities\**
- *Indigenous Peoples\**
- *Workers\**
- Forest dwellers
- Neighbors
- Downstream landowners
- Local processors
- Local businesses
- *Tenure\** and *use rights\** holders, including landowners
- Organizations authorized or known to act on behalf of affected stakeholders, for example social and environmental NGOs, labor unions, etc.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Age-class:** A distinct group of trees or portion of the growing stock of a *forest\** recognized based on similar age or similar successional stage.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Alien species:** A species, subspecies or lower taxon, introduced outside its natural past or present distribution; includes any part, gametes, seeds, eggs, or propagules of such species that might survive and subsequently reproduce.

**(Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

---

**Ancient forest:** *Forests\** which:

- have not undergone any significant industrial activity;
- are naturally regenerated;
- contain trees of size, age and spacing which vary widely;
- contain densities of dead standing trees (snags) and fallen trees that are greater than in younger *forests\**;
- contain trees that are large for the species and site combination;
- contain canopies with many openings;
- are typically small relative to the *ecosystems\** in which they exist; and
- are at the extreme end of the normal natural disturbance cycle.

**(Source: From a variety of sources, including FAO Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2002. *Proceedings: Expert Meeting on Harmonizing forest-related definitions for use by various stakeholders*. Rome, 22-25 Jan. 2002.**

**<http://www.fao.org/docrep/005/Y4171E/Y4171E34.htm>; and Grumbine, R.E. 1993. *Ghost Bears: Exploring the Biodiversity Crisis*. Island Press. Washington D.C.**

**Applicable law:** Means applicable to *The Organization\** as a *legal\** person or business enterprise in or for the benefit of the *Management Unit\** and those laws which affect the implementation of the FSC *Principles\** and *Criteria\**. This includes any combination of *statutory law\** (Parliamentary-approved) and case law (court interpretations), subsidiary regulations, associated administrative procedures, and the national constitution (if present) which invariably takes *legal\** precedence over all other *legal\** instruments.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Aquifer:** A formation, group of formations, or part of a formation that contains sufficient saturated permeable material to yield significant quantities of water to wells and springs for that unit to have economic value as a source of water in that region.

**(Source: Gratzfeld, J. (editor) 2003. *Extractive industries in arid and semi-arid zones*. IUCN Environmental Management Series No. 1.111 p.) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Area of ecological influence:** The entire area encompassed by ecological units (for example *ecodistricts\**, biogeoclimatic zones) that occur at least partly within the *Management Unit\**. Identification of the area of ecological influence should consider the *scale\** of the *Management Unit\** and the ecological qualities of the *landscape\** within which the *Management Unit\** is located. The area of ecological influence should be based on an existing ecological classification system in use in the *Management Unit\*\*'s\** province or region.

**(Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**

**Best available information:** Data, facts, documents, *expert\** opinions, and results of field surveys or consultations with *stakeholders\** and *engagement\** with *Indigenous Peoples\** that are most credible, accurate, complete, and/or pertinent and that can be obtained through *reasonable\** effort and cost, subject to the *scale\** and *intensity\** of the *management activities\** and the *Precautionary Approach\**.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Best efforts:** Persistent and sincere attempts by *The Organization\** to address a requirement. Best efforts are not always met with success, but to address the *Indicators'\** requirements for best efforts, evidence must be presented that continuing efforts by various means have been attempted.

**(Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**

**Best management practice:** Best management practices (BMPs) are methods or techniques based on known science found to be the most effective and practical and that, if followed, should meet the requirements of *Indicators\** or achieve *objectives\**.

**(Source: Adapted from BC Ministry of the Environment (2015) and Business Dictionary (2015))**

**Binding agreement:** A deal or pact, written or not, which is compulsory to its signatories and enforceable by law. Parties involved in the agreement do so freely and accept it voluntarily.

**(FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Biological diversity:** The variability among living *organisms\** from all sources including, inter alia, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic *ecosystems\** and the ecological complexes of which they are a part; this includes diversity within species, between species and of *ecosystems\**.

**(Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Biological control agents:** *Organisms\** used to eliminate or regulate the population of other *organisms\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0, based on FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 and World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website)**

**Caribou range:** The geographic area occupied by a local population of boreal or mountain caribou as identified by the Federal Recovery Strategy or action plans for boreal woodland caribou (Environment Canada, 2012), or the Federal Recovery Strategy for southern mountain caribou (Environment Canada, 2014), or updates to those strategies or revised areas identified by provincial resource management agencies.

**(Addition; Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**

**Collective rights:** Shared or joint rights held by a *local community\** and that are not the mere aggregation of rights held individually by members of the group.

**(Source: FSC Canada Standard Development Group, based on Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy)**

**Community forest:** Any forestry operation managed by a local government, community group, First Nation or community-held corporation for the benefit of the entire community, in which profits are cycled back into the community, and has a total area equal to or under 80,000 hectares.

**(Source: Adapted from BC Community Forest Association definition)**

**Complaint:** The expression of dissatisfaction or concern by any person or organization presented to *The Organization\**, relating to its *management activities\** or its conformity with the FSC *Principles\** and *Criteria\**, where a response is expected.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0 definition of dispute and Merriam-Webster)**

**Confidential information:** Private facts, data and content that, if made *publicly available\**, might put at *risk\** *The Organization\**, its business interests or its relationships with *stakeholders\**, clients and competitors.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Conflict of interest:** Situation in which a party has an actual or perceived interest that gives, or could have the appearance of giving, that party an incentive for personal, organizational, or professional gain, such that the party's interest could conflict, or be perceived to conflict with, the conduct of an impartial and objective certification process.

**(Source: FSC-STD-20-001 V4-0)**

**Connectivity:** The degree to which *habitat\** patches or environments are linked by single or multiple corridors or broad expanses of *habitat\**. Connectivity recognizes the need for *habitats\** to address several kinds of movements: 1) daily movements among *habitat\** patches; 2) migrations/movement between seasonal ranges/use areas; and 3) dispersal movements of young animals. Conditions necessary for connectivity and its effectiveness will depend on the specific purpose of the connectivity and the requirements of species or *ecosystems\** considered.  
**(Source: Adapted from FSC Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia 2005)**

**Consensus:** General agreement, characterized by the absence of sustained opposition to substantial issues by any important part of the concerned interests and by a process that involves seeking to consider the views of all parties concerned and to reconcile any conflicting arguments. Note: Consensus need not imply unanimity.  
**(Source FSC-PRO-01-003 V3-1)**

**Conservation/Protection:** These words are used interchangeably when referring to *management activities\** designed to maintain the identified environmental or cultural values in existence *long-term\**. *Management activities\** may range from zero or minimal interventions to a specified range of appropriate interventions and activities designed to maintain, or compatible with maintaining, these identified values.  
**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Conservation Areas Network:** Those portions of the *Management Unit\** and the area of *ecological influence\** for which *conservation\** is the primary and, in some circumstances, exclusive *objective\**. For public lands, the Conservation Areas Network is the sum of *protected areas\** and *designated conservation lands\**. For private lands, the Conservation Areas Network is the sum of *protected areas\**, *designated conservation lands\** and *secondary conservation lands\**.  
**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Conservation zones [and protection areas]:** Defined areas that are designated and managed primarily to safeguard species, *habitats\**, *ecosystems\**, natural features or other site-specific values because of their natural environmental or cultural values, or for purposes of monitoring, evaluation or research, not necessarily excluding other *management activities\**. For the purposes of the *Principles\** and *Criteria\**, these terms are used interchangeably, without implying that one always has a higher degree of *conservation\** or *protection\** than the other.  
**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Criterion (pl. Criteria):** A means of judging if a *Principle\** (of forest stewardship) has been fulfilled.  
**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0)**

**Critical:** The concept of criticality or fundamentality in Principle 9 and *HCVs\** relates to irreplaceability and to cases where loss or major damage to this HCV would cause serious prejudice or suffering to *affected stakeholders\**. An *ecosystem service\** is critical (HCV 4) where a disruption of that service is likely to cause, or threaten, severe negative impacts on the welfare, health or survival of *local communities\**, on the environment, on *HCVs\**, or on the function of significant *infrastructure\**, such as *roads\**, dams, buildings etc. The notion of criticality here refers to the importance and *risk\** for natural resources and environmental and socio-economic values.  
**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Critical habitat:** In the context of Indicator 6.4.5, critical habitat for boreal caribou is identified as: i) the area within the boundary of each *boreal caribou range\** that provides an overall ecological condition that will allow for an ongoing recruitment and retirement cycle of habitat, which maintains a perpetual state of a minimum of 65% of the area as *undisturbed habitat\**; and ii) biophysical attributes required by boreal caribou to carry out life processes. The precise location of the 65% *undisturbed habitat\** within the range will vary over time.

**(Source: Environment Canada 2011).** For a more complete definition refer to Environment Canada (2011)

**Crown land:** In Canada, public lands are often referred as Crown lands. The federal and provincial/territorial governments have specific responsibilities regarding public lands so these lands can be administered differently in each province.

**(Source: FSC Canada)**

**Culturally appropriate [mechanisms]:** Means/approaches for outreach to target groups that are in harmony with the customs, values, sensitivities, and ways of life of the target audience.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Cumulative disturbance:** As used in Indicator 6.4.5, cumulative disturbance is the proportion of a range with combined anthropogenic and natural disturbances less than a benchmark age. A commonly-used benchmark age has been 40 years, however there is uncertainty about the broad applicability of this benchmark. Different boreal forest regions are characterized by varying disturbance ecologies and there is also variability in the relationship between the level of cumulative disturbance and caribou productivity. A benchmark of 40 years is typically used in the absence of an empirical basis for another benchmark.

**(Source: Adapted from Environment Canada 2011)**

**Customary law:** Interrelated sets of *customary rights\** may be recognized as customary law. In some jurisdictions, customary law is equivalent to *statutory law\**, within its defined area of competence and may replace the *statutory law\** for defined ethnic or other social groups. In some jurisdictions customary law complements *statutory law\** and is applied in specified circumstances (Source: Based on N.L. Peluso and P. Vandergeest. 2001. *Genealogies of the political forest and customary rights in Indonesia, Malaysia and Thailand, Journal of Asian Studies* 60(3):761–812).

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Customary rights:** Rights which result from a long series of habitual or customary actions, constantly repeated, which have, by such repetition and by uninterrupted acquiescence, acquired the force of a law within a geographical or sociological unit.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0)**

**Cutblock:** A contiguous area of *forest\** that has been harvested except for individual trees and patches left either for silvicultural purposes or to provide ecological benefits.

**(Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**

**Deactivation/Abandonment:** Used in reference to access *road\** management. Deactivation and abandonment are undertaken with the intent of rendering *roads\** inaccessible or impassable to motorized vehicles. Deactivation is an active process involving physical manipulation of *road\** surfaces or water crossings, whereas abandonment is a passive process involving cessation of maintenance so that the *road\** surface eventually falls into disrepair or is naturally revegetated.

**(Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**



**Designated conservation lands:** Areas identified through the process of addressing the requirements of Criterion 6.5 that are to be managed through the exclusion of *forest management activities\** (except in rare instances when necessary to achieve *objectives\** associated with *restoration\** or maintenance of *natural conditions\**) in recognition of their ecological and/or cultural values.

**(Source: FSC Canada Standard Development Group)**

**Dispute.** Represent a formal disagreement, after the initial attempts to resolve a *complaint\** have not been achieved.

**(Source: FSC Canada, based on Merriam-Webster)**

**Dispute of substantial duration:** *Dispute\** that continues for more than twice as long as the predefined timelines in the FSC System (this is, for more than 6 months after receiving the complaint, based on FSC-STD-20-001).

**(Sources: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Dispute of substantial magnitude:** A dispute of substantial magnitude is a *dispute\** that involves one or more of the following:

- Where the negative impact of *management activities\** on local communities or on *Indigenous Peoples\* legal\* or customary rights\** is of such a scale that it cannot be reversed or mitigated;
- Physical violence;
- Significant destruction of property;
- Presence of law enforcement or military bodies;
- Acts of intimidation against *workers\** and *stakeholders\**.

A *dispute\** can become of substantial magnitude if it is of substantial duration, implies a significant number of interests and has a significant negative impact to the forest resource / value.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Economic viability:** The capability of developing and surviving as a relatively independent social, economic or political unit. Economic viability may require but is not synonymous with profitability.

**(Source: Based on the definition provided on the website of the European Environment Agency) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Ecoregion/Ecodistrict:** Large unit of land or water containing a geographically distinct assemblage of species, natural communities, and environmental conditions

**(Source: WWF Global 200. <https://www.worldwildlife.org/biomes> )**

**Ecosystem:** A dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit.

**(Source: Convention on Biological Diversity 1992, Article 2) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Ecosystem function:** An intrinsic *ecosystem\** characteristic related to the set of conditions and processes whereby an *ecosystem\** maintains its integrity (such as primary productivity, food chain, biogeochemical cycles). Ecosystem functions include such processes as decomposition, production, nutrient cycling, and fluxes of nutrients and energy. For FSC purposes, this definition includes ecological and evolutionary processes such as gene flow and disturbance regimes, regeneration cycles and ecological seral development (succession) stages.

**(Source: Based on R. Hassan, R. Scholes and N. Ash. 2005. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment Series. Island Press, Washington DC; and R.F. Noss. 1990. Indicators for monitoring biodiversity: a hierarchical approach. Conservation Biology 4(4):355–364) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Ecosystem integrity:** A broad concept often equated with *ecosystem\** health; this term generally includes the notions of containing a complete suite of naturally functioning ecological processes across all scales consistent with the size of the *ecosystem\**, complete, or nearly complete representation of naturally occurring species, minimally impaired by human-caused stresses.

**(Source: adapted from King, A.W. 1993. Considerations of scale and hierarchy. In S. Woodley, J. Kay, and G. Francis. Ecological Integrity and the Management of Ecosystems, 19-46. St. Lucie Press. Delray Beach, FL.)**

**Ecosystem services:** The benefits people obtain from *ecosystems\**. These include:

- provisioning services, such as food, forest products and water;
- regulating services, such as regulation of floods, drought, land degradation, air quality, climate and disease;
- supporting services, such as soil formation and nutrient cycling; and
- cultural services and cultural values, such as recreational, spiritual, religious and other non-material benefits.

**(Source: Based on R. Hassan, R. Scholes and N. Ash. 2005. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment Series. Island Press, Washington DC) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Efficient collaborative process:** As used in Indicator 6.4.5c, involves circumstances in which *The Organization\** engages with self-identified interested and *affected stakeholders\** and *affected Indigenous Peoples\** to identify a caribou conservation approach. The process is collaborative in that the parties work together to achieve an agreed-upon end point, and the process is efficient in that it recognizes the need for timeliness to address *The Organization's\** FSC obligations and the urgency associated with identifying conservation-oriented caribou management strategies.

**(Source: FSC Canada)**

**Employee:** Anyone who is on the payroll of a specific business, in a full-time, part-time or seasonal capacity, for whom the *resource manager\** withholds and remits taxes in accordance with federal and provincial laws.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada Great Lakes St. Lawrence Standard 2010)**

**Endemic:** A species or subspecies that is restricted to a defined geographical area.

**(Source: FSC Canada HCV Sub-committee)**

**Enduring feature:** A *landscape\** element or unit within a natural region characterized by relatively uniform origin of surficial material, texture of surficial material and topography. **(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Engagement:** The process by which *The Organization\** communicates, consults and/or provides for the participation of interested and/or *affected stakeholders\** and *Indigenous Peoples\**, ensuring that their concerns, desires, expectations, needs, rights and opportunities are considered in the establishment, implementation and updating of the *management plan\**.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC-SDT-01-001 V5-0)**

**Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA):** Systematic process used to identify potential environmental and social impacts of proposed projects, to evaluate alternative approaches, and to design and incorporate appropriate prevention, mitigation, management and monitoring measures. The assessment methodologies used must be scientifically sound. The scope of an assessment is typically outlined at the start of the project so that the project has some well-defined boundaries. These may include physical, temporal, political, cultural and financial limits within the project mandate. Aspects of the environment typically included in assessments are site impacts on soil, and site attributes, community impacts on local wildlife and ecological communities, and *landscape\** impacts on the broader forest *ecosystem\**.  
**(Source: based on Environmental impact assessment, guidelines for FAO field projects. Food and agriculture organization of the United Nations (FAO). Rome, STD-01-001 V5-0) (FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Environmental values:** The following set of elements of the biophysical and human environment:

- *ecosystem functions\** (including carbon sequestration and storage);
- *biological diversity\**;
- water resources;
- soils;
- atmosphere;
- *landscape values\** (including cultural and spiritual values).

The actual worth attributed to these elements depends on human and societal perceptions.  
**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Ephemeral stream:** A stream that flows briefly only in direct response to precipitation in the immediate locality and whose channel is always above the water table.  
**(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Expert:** 1. An individual whose knowledge or skill is specialized and profound as the result of much practical or academic experience. 2. A recognized authority on a topic by virtue of the body of relevant material published on the topic, their stature within the professional community, and the broadly-recognized accumulated related experience. 3. An individual who possess a wealth of experience on a topic such as may be accumulated through practical means including the accumulation of *traditional knowledge\**.  
**(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Externalities:** The positive and negative impacts of activities on *stakeholders\** that are not directly involved in those activities, or on a natural resource or the environment, which do not usually enter standard cost accounting systems, such that the market prices of the products of those activities do not reflect the full costs or benefits.  
**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Fair compensation:** An action or process (which may include remuneration) offered to redress a harm that is proportionate to the magnitude and type of harm experienced or services rendered by another party to reconcile the harm.  
**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Fertilizer:** Mineral or organic substances, most commonly N, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> and K<sub>2</sub>O, which are applied to soil for enhancing plant growth.  
**(FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Focal species:** Species whose requirements for persistence define the attributes that must be present if that *landscape\** is to meet the requirements of the species that occur there.

---

**(Source: Lambeck, R., J. 1997. Focal Species: A multi-species Umbrella for Nature Conservation. Conservation Biology vol. 11 (4): 849-856) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Forest:** A tract of land dominated by trees.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0. Derived from FSC Guidelines for Certification Bodies, Scope of Forest Certification, Section 2.1 first published in 1998, and revised as FSC-GUI-20-200 in 2005, and revised again in 2010 as FSC-DIR-20-007 FSC Directive on Forest Management Evaluations, ADVICE-20-007-01). (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Forest Management Activities:** see *Management Activities\**.

**Forest Management Unit:** see *Management Unit\**

**Forest type:** Forest type is a group of forest ecosystems\* of generally similar composition that can be readily differentiated from other such groups by their tree and under-canopy species composition, productivity and/or crown closure.

**(Source: Convention on Biological diversity)**

**Free, Prior, and Informed Consent (FPIC):** A legal\* condition whereby a person or community can be said to have given consent to an action prior to its commencement, based upon a clear appreciation and understanding of the facts, implications and future consequences of that action, and the possession of all relevant facts at the time when consent is given. Free, prior and informed consent includes the right to grant, modify, withhold or withdraw approval.

**(Source: Based on the Preliminary working paper on the principle of Free, Prior and Informed Consent of Indigenous Peoples (...)) (E/CN.4/Sub.2/AC.4/2004/4 8 July 2004) of the 22nd Session of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights, Working Group on Indigenous Populations, 19–23 July 2004). (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Gender equality:** Gender equality or gender equity means that women and men have equal conditions for realizing their full human rights and for contributing to, and benefiting from, economic, social, cultural and political development.

**(Source: Adapted from FAO, IFAD and ILO workshop on 'Gaps, trends and current research in gender dimensions of agricultural and rural employment: differentiated pathways out of poverty', Rome, 31 March to 2 April 2009.). (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Genetically modified organism:** An organism\* in which the genetic material has been altered in a way that does not occur naturally by mating and/or natural recombination.

**(Source: Based on FSC-POL-30-602 FSC Interpretation on GMO (Genetically Modified Organisms)). (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Genotype:** The genetic constitution of an organism\*.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5- 0))**

**Good faith:** The principle of good faith implies that the parties make every effort to reach an agreement, conduct genuine and constructive negotiations, avoid delays in negotiations, respect concluded agreements, and give sufficient time to discuss and settle dispute\*s.

**(Source: FSC Policy Motion 40/2017)**

**Grassland:** Land covered with herbaceous plants with less than 10% tree and shrub cover.

**(Source: UNEP, cited in FAO. 2002. Second Expert Meeting on Harmonizing Forest-Related Definitions for use by various stakeholders) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Group entity:** The group entity is the entity representing the forest properties that constitute a group for FSC forest management certification. The group entity applies for group certification and finally holds the forest management certificate. The group entity is responsible to the certification body for ensuring that the requirements of the FSC *Principles\** and *Criteria\** for Forest Stewardship are met in all forest properties participating in the group. The group entity may be an individual, e.g. a *resource manager\**, a cooperative body, an owner association, or other similar *legal\** entity.

**(Source: FSC-STD-30-005)**

**Habitat:** The place or type of site where an *organism\** or population occurs.

**(Source: Based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 2) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Habitat features:** *Forest\** *stand\** attributes and structures, including but not limited to:

- Old commercial and non-commercial trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy;
- Rare plant communities;
- Trees with special ecological value;
- Vertical and horizontal complexity;
- Standing dead trees;
- Dead fallen wood;
- *Forest\** openings attributable to natural disturbances;
- Nesting sites;
- Small *wetlands\**, bogs, fens;
- Ponds;
- Areas for procreation;
- Areas for feeding and shelter, including seasonal cycles of breeding;
- Areas for migration;
- Areas for hibernation.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Harvest area:** A *forest\** area in which harvesting operations have taken place. A harvest area often consists of more than one *cutblock\**. *Cutblocks\** within a harvest area are usually close enough so that they are planned and implemented as part of the same forestry operation. *Cutblocks\** within a harvest area are generally separated by patches or linear stretches of contiguous *forest\** so that there is not an uninterrupted cut area between the *cutblocks\**.

**(Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**

**High Conservation Value (HCV):** Any of the following values:

HCV 1: Species Diversity. Concentrations of *biological diversity\** including *endemic\* species\**, and *rare\**, *threatened\** or *endangered\** species, that are *significant\** at global, regional or national levels.

HCV 2: *Landscape\*-level ecosystems\** and mosaics. *Intact Forest Landscapes\**, large *landscape\*-level ecosystems\** and *ecosystem\** mosaics that are *significant\** at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

HCV 3: *Ecosystems\** and *habitats\**. Rare, threatened, or endangered ecosystems, *habitats\** or *refugia\**.

HCV 4: *Critical\* ecosystem services\**. Basic *ecosystem services\** in *critical\** situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

HCV 5: Community needs. Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\** (for example for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water), identified through *engagement\** with these communities or *Indigenous Peoples\**.

HCV 6: Cultural values. Sites, resources, *habitats\** and *landscapes\** of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of *critical\** cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**, identified through *engagement\** with these *local communities\** or *Indigenous Peoples\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0, based on FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**High Conservation Value assessment:** The complete process of identifying *High Conservation Values\** and *High Conservation Value areas\** and developing management and monitoring plans to ensure that the values identified are maintained or enhanced.

**(Source: Adapted from Stewart et al. 2008)**

**High Conservation Value areas:** Zones and physical spaces which possess and/or are needed for the existence and maintenance of identified *High Conservation Values\**.

**(FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**High grading:** High grading is a tree removal practice in which only the best quality, most valuable timber trees are removed, often without regenerating new tree seedlings or removing the remaining poor quality and suppressed understory trees and, in doing so, degrading the ecological health and commercial value of the *forest\**. High grading *stands\** as a counterpoint to sustainable resource management.

**(Source: based on Glossary of Forest Management Terms. North Carolina Division of Forest Resources. March 2009) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Hydrologic features:** Water-related features visible at the land surface, such as stream channels, lakes, springs, seepage zones and *wetlands\**.

**(Source: FSC Canada BC Standard)**

**Independent expert:** An *expert\** who is not employed by *The Organization\** or government and has no apparent *conflict of interest\**.

**(Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**

**Indicator:** A quantitative or qualitative variable which can be measured or described, and which provides a means of judging whether a *Management Unit\** complies with the requirements of an *FSC Criterion\**. Indicators and the associated thresholds thereby define the requirements for responsible forest management at the level of the *Management Unit\** and are the primary basis of forest evaluation.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0)**

**Indigenous Peoples:** The following criteria may be used to identify Indigenous Peoples:

- The key characteristic or criterion is self-identification as Indigenous Peoples at the individual level and acceptance by the community as their member;
- Historical continuity with pre-colonial and/or pre-settler societies;
- Strong link to territories and surrounding natural resources;
- Distinct social, economic or political systems;
- Distinct language, culture and beliefs;
- Form non-dominant groups of society;

- Resolve to maintain and reproduce their ancestral environments and systems as distinctive peoples and communities.

**(Source: Adapted from United Nations Permanent Forum on Indigenous, Factsheet ‘Who are Indigenous Peoples’ October 2007; United Nations Development Group, ‘Guidelines on Indigenous Peoples’ Issues’ United Nations 2009, United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, 13 September 2007). (Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Infrastructure:** In the context of forest management, *roads\**, bridges, culverts, log landings, quarries, impoundments, buildings and other structures required while implementing the *management plan\**.

**(IFSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Intact Forest Landscape:** A territory within today's global extent of *forest\** cover which contains *forest\** and non-forest *ecosystems\** minimally influenced by human economic activity, with an area of at least 500 km<sup>2</sup> (50,000 ha) and a minimal width of 10 km (measured as the diameter of a circle that is entirely inscribed within the boundaries of the territory).

**(Source: Intact Forests / Global Forest Watch. Glossary definition as provided on Intact Forest website. 2006-2014). (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)** (*Methodological flexibility for delineating IFLs in Canada is provided in FSC Canada 2017 «Interim Guidance for the Delineation of Intact Forest Landscapes», May 25, 2017*)

**Intellectual property:** Practices as well as knowledge, innovations and other creations of the mind.

**(Source: Based on the Convention on Biological Diversity, Article 8(j); and World Intellectual Property Organization. What is Intellectual Property? WIPO Publication No. 450(E)) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Intensity:** A measure of the force, severity or strength of a *management activity\** or other occurrence affecting the nature of the activity's impacts.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0 V1-0)**

**Interested stakeholder:** Any person, group of persons, or entity that has shown an interest, or is known to have an interest, in the activities of a *Management Unit\**. The following are examples of interested stakeholders.

- Conservation organizations, for example environmental NGOs;
- Labor (rights) organizations, for example labor unions;
- Human rights organizations, for example social NGOs;
- Local development projects;
- Local governments;
- National government departments functioning in the region;
- FSC National Offices;
- *Experts\** on specific issues, for example *High Conservation Values\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Intermittent stream:** A stream in contact with the groundwater table that flows only at certain times of year, such as when the groundwater table is high and/or when it receives water from springs or from surface areas. Also known as a seasonal stream.

**(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Internationally accepted scientific protocol:** A predefined science-based procedure which is either published by an international scientific network or union, or referenced frequently in the international scientific literature.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Interquartile range:** A measure of variability based on dividing a data set into quartiles that defines the middle 50% of values in a distribution.

**(Source: Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources 2014)**

**Invasive species:** Species that are rapidly expanding outside of their native range. Invasive species can alter ecological relationships among *native species\** and can affect *ecosystem function\** and human health.

**(Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Lands and territories:** For the purposes of the *Principles\** and *Criteria\** these are lands or territories that *Indigenous Peoples\** or *local communities\** have traditionally owned, or customarily used or occupied, and where access to natural resources is vital to the sustainability of their cultures and livelihoods.

**(Source: Based on World Bank safeguard OP 4.10 Indigenous Peoples, section 16 (a). July 2005.) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Landscape:** A geographical mosaic composed of interacting *ecosystems\** resulting from the influence of geological, topographical, soil, climatic, biotic and human interactions in a given area.

**(Source: Based on World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions as provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Landscape values:** Landscape values can be visualized as layers of human perceptions overlaid on the physical *landscape\**. Some landscape values, like economic, recreation, subsistence value or visual quality are closely related to physical *landscape\** attributes. Other landscape values, such as intrinsic or spiritual value are more symbolic in character and are influenced more by individual perception or social construction than physical *landscape\** attributes.

**(Source: Based on website of the Landscape Value Institute) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Legal:** In accordance with primary legislation (national or *local laws\**) or secondary legislation (subsidiary regulations, decrees, orders, etc.). Legal also includes rule-based decisions made by *legally competent\** agencies where such decisions flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations. Decisions made by *legally competent\** agencies may not be legal if they do not flow directly and logically from the laws and regulations and if they are not rule-based but use administrative discretion.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Legally competent:** Mandated in law to perform a certain function.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Legal registration:** National or local *legal\** license or set of permissions to operate as an enterprise, with rights to buy and sell products and/or services commercially. The license or permissions can apply to an individual, a privately-owned enterprise or a publicly-owned corporate entity. The rights to buy and sell products and/or services do not carry the obligation to do so, so legal registration applies also to *The Organizations\** operating a *Management Unit\** without sales of products or services; for example, for unpriced recreation or for *conservation\** of biodiversity or *habitat\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**



**Legal status:** The way in which the *Management Unit\** is classified according to law. In terms of *tenure\**, it means the category of *tenure\**, such as communal land or leasehold or freehold or State land or government land, etc. If the *Management Unit\** is being converted from one category to another, for example, from State land to communal indigenous land, the status includes the current position in the transition process. In terms of administration, legal status could mean that the land is owned by the nation, and is administered on behalf of the nation by a government department, and is leased by a government Ministry to a private sector operator through a concession.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Living wage:** The remuneration received for a standard work week by a *worker\** in a particular place that sufficient to afford a decent standard of living for the *worker\** and her or his family. Elements of a decent standard of living include food, water, housing, education, health care, transport, clothing, and other essential needs including provision for unexpected events.

**(Source: A Shared Approach to a Living Wage. ISEAL Living Wage Group. November 2013) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Local communities:** (Human) Communities that are in or adjacent to the *Management Unit\**, and also those that are close enough to have a significant impact on the economy or the *environmental values\** of the *Management Unit\** or to have their economies, *collective rights\** or environments values significantly affected by the *forest management activities\** on the *Management Unit\**. In Canada, communities to be considered are the ones officially identified as a municipality by the Canada Revenue Agency which list them and shows their qualified donees status under the Income Tax Act (<http://www.cra-arc.gc.ca/chrts-gvng/qafd-dns/mncplts-eng.html>). The respective provincial lists may be also used.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Local laws:** The whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees) which is limited in application to a geographic district within a national territory, as well as secondary regulations, and tertiary administrative procedures (rules/ requirements) that derive their authority directly and explicitly from these primary and secondary laws. Laws derive authority ultimately from the Westphalian concept of sovereignty of the Nation State.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Long-term:** For *Indicators\** that refer to long-term or longer-term as a basis for defining when modelled quantitative *objectives\** or targets of *Indicators\** should be achieved, the term means the longest modelling horizon of the existing *forest management plan\**. The term is also used to refer to the time-scale of the forest owner or manager as manifested by the *objectives\** of the *management plan\**, the rate of harvesting, and the commitment to maintain permanent *forest\** cover. The length of time involved will vary according to the context and ecological conditions, and will be a function of how long it takes a given *ecosystem\** to recover its natural structure and composition following harvesting or disturbance, or to produce mature or primary conditions.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0)**

**Low intensity forest:** *Forests\** with a harvesting rate of less than 20% of the mean annual growth in timber, and either an annual harvest or an annual average harvest of less than 5,000 m<sup>3</sup> (averaged over the certificate lifetime).

**(Source: Based on FSC-STD-01-003)**

INTENT BOX

Native forests\* used solely for harvesting *non-timber forest products\** also qualify as *low intensity forests\** regardless of size or *intensity\**.

*Plantations\** of *non-timber forest products\** shall not be considered *low intensity forest\** *Management Units\** within the meaning of this Standard.

**Management activities:** Any or all operations, processes or procedures associated with managing a *forest\**, including, but not limited to: planning, consultation, harvesting, access construction and maintenance, silvicultural activities (planting, site preparation, tending), monitoring, assessment, and reporting.

**(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Management objective:** Specific management goals, practices, outcomes, and approaches established to achieve the requirements of this Standard.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Management plan:** The collection of documents, reports, records and maps that describe, justify and regulate the activities carried out by any manager, staff or organization within or in relation to the *Management Unit\**, including statements of *objectives\** and policies.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Management Unit:** A spatial area or areas submitted for FSC certification with clearly defined boundaries managed to a set of explicit *long-term\* management objectives\** which are expressed in a *management plan\**. These areas include:

- all facilities and areas within or adjacent to this spatial area or areas under *legal\* title* or management control of, or operated by or on behalf of *The Organization\**, for contributing to the *management objectives\**; and
- all facilities and area(s) outside, and not adjacent to this spatial area or areas and operated by or on behalf of *The Organization\**, solely for contributing to the *management objectives\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Marketable:** A product that can be sold or exchanged because one or more buyers exist.

**(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard, 2004)**

**Merchantable:** A log or tree which meets or exceeds minimum size requirements and contains a proportion of sound wood in excess of minimum requirements, as determined according to applicable scaling (wood measurement) standards.

**(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard, 2004)**

**Mutually agreed:** The parties undertake obligations to each other to do, or not to do, one or more actions to address legitimate concerns of individuals in a group decision-making process. Evidence of an agreement can be oral or put in writing (and may be referred to as a contract).

**(Source: FSC Canada, based on**

**<https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/mutual> and <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/agree>)**

**National laws:** The whole suite of primary and secondary laws (acts, ordinances, statutes, decrees), which is applicable to a national territory, as well as secondary regulations, and tertiary administrative procedures (rules/ requirements) that derive their authority directly and explicitly from these primary and secondary laws.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Native ecosystem:** See *natural conditions*\*.

**Native species:** Species, subspecies, or lower taxon, occurring within its natural range (past or present) and dispersal potential (that is, within the range it occupies naturally or could occupy without direct or indirect introduction or care by humans).

**(Source: Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD). Invasive Alien Species Programme. Glossary of Terms as provided on CBD website). (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Natural conditions:** For the purposes of the *Principles*\* and *Criteria*\* and any applications of *restoration*\* techniques, terms such as 'more natural conditions', 'native ecosystem' provide for managing sites to favour or *restore*\* *native species*\* and associations of *native species*\* that are typical of the locality, and for managing these associations and other *environmental values*\* so that they form *ecosystems*\* typical of the locality. Further guidelines may be provided in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Natural forest:** A *forest*\* area with many of the principal characteristics and key elements of *native ecosystems*\*, such as complexity, structure and *biological diversity*\*, including soil characteristics, flora and fauna, in which all or almost all the trees are *native species*\*, not classified as *plantations*\*.

Natural forest includes the following categories:

- *Forest*\* affected by harvesting or other disturbances, in which trees are being or have been regenerated by a combination of natural and artificial regeneration with species typical of natural forests in that site, and where many of the above-ground and below-ground characteristics of the natural forest are still present. In boreal and north temperate *forests*\* which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, a combination of natural and artificial regeneration to regenerate *forest*\* of the same *native species*\*, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of *native ecosystems*\* of that site, is not by itself considered as conversion to *plantations*\*;
- Natural forests which are maintained by traditional silvicultural practices including natural or assisted natural regeneration;
- Well-developed secondary or colonizing *forest*\* of *native species*\* which has regenerated in non-forest areas;
- The definition of natural forest may include areas described as wooded *ecosystems*\*, woodland and savannah.

The description of natural forests and their principal characteristics and key elements may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples.

Natural forest does not include land which is not dominated by trees, was previously not *forest*\*, and which does not yet contain many of the characteristics and elements of *native ecosystems*\*. Young regeneration may be considered natural forest after some years of ecological progression. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may indicate when such areas may be excised from the *Management Unit*\*, should be restored towards more *natural conditions*\*, or may be converted to other land uses.

FSC has not developed quantitative thresholds between different categories of *forests*\* in terms of area, density, height, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may provide such thresholds and other guidelines, with appropriate descriptions or examples. Pending such guidance, areas dominated by trees, mainly of *native species*\*, may be considered as natural forest.

Thresholds and guidelines may cover areas such as:

- Other vegetation types and non-forest communities and ecosystems\* included in the *Management Unit\**, including *grassland\**, bushland, *wetlands\**, and open woodlands;
- Very young pioneer or colonizing regeneration in a primary succession on new open sites or abandoned farmland, which does not yet contain many of the principal characteristics and key elements of *native ecosystems\**. This may be considered as natural forest through ecological progression after the passage of years;
- Young natural regeneration growing in natural forest areas may be considered as natural forest, even after logging, clear-felling or other disturbances, since many of the principal characteristics and key elements of *native ecosystems\** remain, above-ground and below-ground;
- Areas where deforestation and forest degradation have been so severe that they are no longer 'dominated by trees' may be considered as non-forest, when they have very few of the principal above-ground and below-ground characteristics and key elements of natural forests. Such extreme degradation is typically the result of combinations of repeated and excessively heavy logging, grazing, farming, fuelwood collection, hunting, fire, erosion, mining, settlements, *infrastructure\**, etc. FSC Forest Stewardship Standards may help to decide when such areas should be excised from the *Management Unit\**, should be restored towards more *natural conditions\**, or may be converted to other land uses.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Natural hazards:** disturbances that can present *risks\** to social and *environmental values\** in the *Management Unit\** but that may also comprise important *ecosystem functions\**; examples include drought, flood, fire, landslide, storm, avalanche, etc.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Near Term:** For *Indicators\** which refer to near-term as a basis for defining when aspects of *Indicators\** should be achieved or for the extent of a planning horizon, the term means within the time frame of implementation of operational activities identified in existing *management plans\**. Typically, this is around 5-10 years.

**(Source: FSC Canada Species at Risk Technical Expert Panel)**

**Net expansion:** In the context of Indicator 6.4.5, net expansion of forest management within the range (based on *cumulative disturbance\**) refers to an increase in cumulative disturbed area. In this context, it is possible to harvest an area of previously unharvested *forest\** after a comparably-sized area of disturbed *forest\** has returned to an undisturbed state (that is, after it has been restored). Harvesting within an existing *cumulative disturbance\** footprint does not result in an expansion in disturbance. In these circumstances, the total area of disturbance would not increase and there would be no net expansion of forest management.

**(Source: FSC Canada Species at Risk Technical Expert Panel)**

**Non-timber forest products (NTFP):** All forest products other than timber derived from the *Management Unit\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Normative:** In the context of normative requirements, they are the required elements to be demonstrated and met. Conversely, non-normative means elements are not required, but provide information, context and/or guidance to a concept such as an Intent Box.

**(Source: FSC Canada)**

**Objective:** The basic purpose laid down by *The Organization\** for the forest enterprise, including the decision of policy and the choice of means for attaining the purpose.  
**(Source: Based on F.C. Osmaston. 1968. The Management of Forests. Hafner, New York; and D.R. Johnston, A.J. Grayson and R.T. Bradley. 1967. Forest Planning. Faber & Faber, London) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Obligatory codes of practice:** A manual or handbook or other source of technical instruction which *The Organization\** must implement by law.  
**(Source: FSC-STD-01- 001 V5-0)**

**Occupational accident:** An occurrence arising out of, or during, work which results in fatal or non-fatal injury.  
**(Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Occupational disease:** Any disease contracted because of an exposure to *risk\** factors arising from work activity.  
**(Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Occupational injuries:** Any personal injury, disease or death resulting from an *occupational accident\**.  
**(Source: International Labour Organization (ILO). Bureau of Library and Information Services. ILO Thesaurus as provided on ILO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Old forest:** Later stages in forest development which may be distinctive in composition, but are always distinctive in structure from earlier (young and mature) successional stages.  
**(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Organism:** Any biological entity capable of replication or of transferring genetic material  
**(Source: Council Directive 90/220/EEC). (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**The Organization:** The person or entity holding or applying for certification and therefore responsible for demonstrating compliance with the requirements upon which FSC certification is based.  
**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Overlapping tenure holder:** A licensee, also known as a third-party licensee, that either:

- holds the right to harvest timber on either all or a defined portion of an area that is licensed to and/or managed by another entity; or
- holds a license for exploitation of another resource (e.g., oil and gas) on a land base also occupied by a timber licensee or managed in part to produce forest products.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Peatland:** Is constituted by flooded and soggy areas, with large accumulations of organic material, covered by a layer of poor vegetation associated with a certain degree of acidity, and which presents a characteristic amber colour.  
**(Source: Aguilar, L. 2001. About Fishermen, Fisherwomen, Oceans and tides. IUCN. San Jose (Costa Rica)) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Peer review:** Review by an *independent expert\** on the subject being considered. A key part of the peer-review process is documentation by the forest manager of the manner in which the peer review was considered and incorporated into the products being reviewed.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Pesticide:** Any substance or preparation prepared or used in protecting plants or wood or other plant products or human health or livestock or biodiversity from pests; in controlling pests; or in rendering such pests harmless. (This definition includes insecticides, rodenticides, acaricides, molluscicides, larvaecides, fungicides and herbicides).

**(Source: FSC-POL-30-001 FSC Pesticides Policy (2005))**

**Plans for species at risk:** In this Standard, these plans are documented strategies and procedures for managing *species at risk\** and/or their *habitats\**. Plans can consist of a range of documents including those that have been developed and approved in accordance with federal or provincial legislation, sometimes called "Action Plans" or "Recovery Strategies". Plans can also include documents written by *qualified specialists\** specifically to direct management in the *Forest Management Unit\** and included in *forest management plans\**. Plans written specifically for the *Forest Management Unit\** should not conflict with approved Actions Plans or Recovery Strategies. Plans written specifically for the *Management Unit\** are not intended to replicate the detail and scope of Action Plans or Recovery Strategies, but simply to outline the ways in which the manager is taking a *precautionary approach\** to mitigating the impact of its activities on the species and/or allowing for its recovery. Measures may involve *habitat\* protection\**, *conservation zones\**, seasonal closures, etc. They will not necessarily require a stand-alone plan or strategy for each species, and may be reflected in measures to implement other requirements of this Standard.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Plantation:** A *forest\** area established by planting or sowing with using either *alien\** or *native species\**, often with one or few species, regular spacing and even ages, and which lacks most of the principal characteristics and key elements of *natural forests\**. The description of plantations may be further defined in FSC Forest Stewardship Standards, with appropriate descriptions or examples, such as:

- Areas which would initially have complied with this definition of 'plantation' but which, after the passage of years, contain many or most of the principal characteristics and key elements of *native ecosystems\**, may be classified as *natural forests\**.
- Plantations\* managed to *restore\** and enhance biological and *habitat\** diversity, structural complexity and *ecosystem\** functionality may, after the passage of years, be classified as *natural forests\**.
- Boreal and north temperate *forests\** which are naturally composed of only one or few tree species, in which a combination of natural and artificial regeneration is used to regenerate *forest\** of the same *native species\**, with most of the principal characteristics and key elements of *native ecosystems\** of that site, may be considered as *natural forest\**, and this regeneration is not by itself considered as conversion to plantations.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Precautionary approach:** An approach requiring that when the available information indicates that *management activities\** pose a *threat\** of severe or irreversible damage to the environment or a *threat\** to human welfare, *The Organization\** will take explicit and effective measures to prevent the damage and avoid the *risks\** to welfare, even when the scientific information is incomplete or inconclusive, and when the vulnerability and sensitivity of *environmental values\** are uncertain.

**(Source: Based on Principle 15 of Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992, and Wingspread Statement on the Precautionary Principle of the Wingspread Conference, 23–25 January 1998) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Pre-harvest [condition]:** The diversity, composition, and structure of the *forest\** or *plantation\** prior to felling timber and appurtenant activities such as *road\** building.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0)**

**Pre-industrial forest:** A native *forest\** that has not been subjected to large *scale\** harvesting. A *forest\** that provides for traditional uses by *Indigenous Peoples\** is a pre-industrial forest if it is not also used for large *scale\** harvesting. Pre-industrial forests may have characteristics that exist because of *Indigenous Peoples'\** use.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2014)**

**Pre-industrial condition (PIC):** A natural condition representative of a *pre-industrial forest\**. As used in Principle 6, a pre-industrial condition analysis is a data-based assessment generally providing insight into the *forest types\**, age classes and *landscape\** condition. Sources of information used in pre-industrial condition analyses may include scientific literature, historical records (e.g. inventories, cruises, harvest volumes, dues payments), mill records, fire history, early surveyors' notebooks and maps, and using computer models to 'backcast' the composition of the *pre-industrial forest\**.

**(Source: FSC Canada Standard Development Group)**

**Principle:** An essential rule or element; in FSC's case, of forest stewardship.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0)**

**Productive forest:** All *forest\** areas which are capable of growing commercial trees.

**(Source: Adapted from Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources 2009. Forest Management Planning Manual)**

**Protection:** See definition of *Conservation\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Protected area:** An area protected for *conservation\** purposes by legislation, regulation, or government land-use policy to permanently control human occupancy or activity.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)**

**Protection areas:** See definition of *Conservation Zone\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Publicly available:** In a manner easily accessible to people generally. Confidential or proprietary information is not included in material made publicly available.

**(Source: Adapted from Collins English Dictionary, 2003 Edition) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Qualified specialist(s):** Individuals whose expertise qualifies them to carry out work (e.g. assessments, design of management practices, etc.) required by the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard, considering the following:

- professional ethics;
- accountability;
- experience;
- training;
- formal qualifications;

- familiarity with the FSC National Forest Stewardship Standard.
- familiarity with the *ecosystem\** condition and/or cultural/social/Indigenous factors relevant to the *Management Unit\**.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia 2005)**

**Range of natural variation (RONV):** The range of dynamic change in natural *ecosystems\** considering natural factors that affect the breadth of *ecosystem\** condition. As used in Principle 6 a RONV analysis should portray a range of possible *natural conditions\** of *forest types\**, *age-classes\** and *landscape\** patterns with probabilities associated with the various conditions.

**(Source: Adapted from FSC Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia 2005)**

**Range plan:** In the context of Indicator 6.4.5 and related *Indicators\**: The main purpose of a range plan is to outline how range-specific land and/or resource activities will be managed over space and time to ensure that *critical habitat\** for boreal caribou is protected from destruction. As such, each range plan should reflect disturbance patterns on the *landscape\**, as measured and updated by the provinces and territories, and outline the measures and steps that will be taken to manage the interaction between human disturbance, natural disturbance, and the need to maintain or establish an ongoing, dynamic state of a minimum of 65% of the range as *undisturbed habitat\** at any point in time to achieve or maintain a self-sustaining local population. While the general ecological principles and *critical habitat\** dynamics described in the recovery strategy apply to all ranges, individual ranges also possess a unique mix of ecological and land use conditions (e.g. population condition, *habitat\** condition and configuration, social and legal arrangements) that must be factored into decision making.

**(Source: Environment and Climate Change Canada 2016)**

**Rare species:** Species that are uncommon or scarce but not classified as threatened. These species are in geographically restricted areas or specific *habitats\**, or are scantily scattered on a large *scale\**. They are approximately equivalent to the IUCN (2001) category of Near Threatened (NT), including species that are close to qualifying for, or are likely to qualify for, a *threatened\** category in the near future. They are also approximately equivalent to imperilled species.

**(Source: Based on IUCN. (2001). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK.)**

**Ratified:** The process by which an international law, convention or agreement, including multilateral environmental agreement, is legally approved by a national legislature or equivalent *legal\** mechanism, such that the international law, convention or agreement becomes automatically part of national law or sets in motion the development of national law to give the same *legal\** effect.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Reasonable:** Judged to be fair or appropriate to the circumstances or purposes, based on general experience.

**(Source: Shorter Oxford English Dictionary) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Recharge area:** Area in which groundwater recharge occurs – where water moves downward from the surface to groundwater. An area in which water reaches the zone of saturation by surface infiltration.

**(Source: Heath, R.C., 1984. Ground-water regions of the United States. U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2242. U.S. Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological Survey.**

**<http://pubs.usgs.gov/wsp/wsp2242/#pdf>**



**Refugia:** An isolated area where extensive changes, typically due to changing climate or by disturbances such as those caused by humans, have not occurred and where plants and animals typical of a region may survive.

**(Source: Glen Canyon Dam, Adaptive Management Program Glossary as provided on website of Glen Canyon Dam website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Representative sample areas:** Portions of the *Management Unit*\* delineated for conserving or restoring viable examples of an *ecosystem*\* that would naturally occur in that geographical region.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Resilience:** The ability of a system to maintain key functions and processes in the face of stresses or pressures by either resisting or adapting to change. Resilience can be applied to both ecological systems and social systems.

**(Source: IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas (IUCN-WCPA). 2008. Establishing Marine Protected Area Networks – Making it Happen. Washington D.C.: IUCN-WCPA National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and The Nature Conservancy.) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Resource manager:** A person or *The Organization*\* that has been given the responsibilities by forest owners for the utilization of their forest resources, including operational planning and harvesting operations. In a group scheme, resource manager and *group entity*\* may be the same person/ organization. This is often referred to as 'resource manager type of group' or 'Type II Group').

**(Source: FSC-STD-30-005)**

**Restore / Restoration:** In some cases, restore means to repair the damage done to *environmental values*\* that resulted from *management activities*\* or other causes. In other cases, restore means the formation of more *natural conditions*\* in sites which have been degraded or converted to other land uses. **(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

*The Organization*\* is not necessarily obliged to restore those *environmental values*\* that have been affected by factors beyond the control of *The Organization*\*, for example by natural disasters, by climate change, or by the legally authorized activities of third parties, such as public *infrastructure*\*, mining, hunting or settlement. *FSC-POL-20-003 The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification* describes the processes by which such areas may be excised from the area certified, when appropriate.

**Riparian zone:** Interface between land and a *water body*\*, and the vegetation associated with it.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Risk:** The probability of an unacceptable negative impact arising from any activity in the *Management Unit*\* combined with its seriousness in terms of consequences.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Road:** A constructed linear feature capable of supporting use by a pickup truck.

**(Source: FSC Canada Technical Expert Panel)**

**Scale:** A measure of the extent to which a *management activity*\* or event affects an environmental value or a *Management Unit*\*, in time or space. An activity with a small or low spatial scale affects only a small proportion of the *forest*\* each year, an activity with a small or low temporal scale occurs only at long intervals.

**(Source: FSC-STD- 01-001 V5-0)**

**Scale, intensity and risk (SIR):** See individual definitions of the terms *scale\**, *intensity\**, and *risk\**.  
(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Secondary conservation lands:** Areas identified through the process of addressing the requirements of Criterion 6.5 for which implementation of forest operations maintains the ecological or cultural properties for which the lands are being conserved.

**Significant:** For the purposes of Principle 9, HCVs 1, 2 and 6 there are three main forms of recognizing significance.

- A designation, classification or recognized *conservation\** status, assigned by an international agency such as IUCN or Birdlife International;
- A designation by national or regional authorities, or by a responsible national conservation organization, based on its concentration of biodiversity;
- A voluntary recognition by the manager, owner or *The Organization\**, based on available information, or of the known or suspected presence of a significant biodiversity concentration, even when not officially designated by other agencies.

Any one of these forms will justify designation as HCVs 1, 2 and 6. Many regions of the world have received recognition for their biodiversity importance, measured in many ways. Existing maps and classifications of priority areas for biodiversity *conservation\** play an essential role in identifying the potential presence of HCVs 1, 2 and 6.

(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)

**Silvicultural system:** A planned series of treatments for tending, harvesting, and re-establishing a *stand\**.

(Source: Dictionary of Forestry, Presse de l'Université Laval, 2000)

**Silviculture:** The art and science of controlling the establishment, growth, composition, health and quality of *forests\** and woodlands to meet the targeted diverse needs and values of landowners and society on a sustainable basis.

(Source: Nieuwenhuis, M. 2000. Terminology of Forest Management. IUFRO World Series Vol. 9. IUFRO 4.04.07 SilvaPlan and SilvaVoc) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Small-scale forest:** *Forests\** managed for timber that are less than or equal to 1000 ha in size.

(Source: Based on FSC-STD-01-003)

**Species at risk:** All species or subspecies or designated populations formally listed in schedules referenced in federal or provincial endangered species/SAR legislation or provincial wildlife/biodiversity legislation that have been classified as Endangered, Threatened, Vulnerable, Special Concern or similar designations. For this Standard the term species at risk also includes all species that have been assessed as 'at risk' designation by bodies formally recognized in federal or provincial endangered species legislation (e.g. the Committee on the Status of Endangered Wildlife in Canada – COSEWIC, plus equivalent provincial bodies).

(Source: FSC Canada Species at Risk Technical Expert Panel)

**Sphere of influence:** Professional associations with colleagues or businesses, agencies and *Indigenous Peoples\** with whom individuals or businesses or agencies interact. When required by *Indicators\** to work within one's sphere of influence, *The Organizations\** and forest managers shall interact with their colleagues, other professionals, *Indigenous Peoples\**, businesses and agencies, including government Ministries, Departments and other agencies, to achieve the *Indicators'\** objectives\*.

(Source: FSC Canada Species at Risk Technical Expert Panel)

**Stakeholder:** See definitions for the terms *affected stakeholder\** and *interested stakeholder\**.  
(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Stand:** A community of trees possessing sufficient uniformity in composition, constitution, age, arrangement or condition to be distinguishable from adjacent communities.  
(Source: FSC Canada National Boreal Standard 2004)

**Statutory law or statute law:** The body of law contained in Acts of Parliament (national legislature).  
(Source: Oxford Dictionary of Law) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Super-canopy trees:** Large, living, individual trees that tower over the forest canopy.  
(Source: Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources 2010)

**Tenure:** Socially defined agreements held by individuals or groups, recognized by *legal\** statutes or customary practice, regarding the 'bundle of rights and duties' of ownership, holding, access and/or usage of a particular land unit or the associated resources there within (such as individual trees, plant species, water, minerals, etc.).  
(Source: World Conservation Union (IUCN). Glossary definitions provided on IUCN website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Threat:** An indication or warning of impending or likely damage or negative impacts.  
(Source: Based on Oxford English Dictionary) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Threatened species:** Species that meet the IUCN (2001) criteria for Vulnerable (VU), Endangered (EN) or Critically Endangered (CR), and are facing a high, very high or extremely high *risk\** of extinction in the wild. These categories may be re-interpreted for FSC purposes according to official national classifications (which have *legal\** significance) and to local conditions and population densities (which should affect decisions about appropriate *conservation\** measures).  
(Source: Adapted from IUCN. (2001). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. IUCN Species Survival Commission. IUCN. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK.)

**Timber harvesting level:** The actual harvest quantity executed on the *Management Unit\**, tracked by either volume (e.g. cubic meters or board feet) or area (e.g. hectares or acres) metrics for comparison with calculated (maximum) allowable harvest levels.  
(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Timely manner:** As promptly as circumstances reasonably allow; not intentionally postponed by *The Organization\**; in compliance with *applicable laws\**, contracts, licenses or invoices.  
(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Traditional knowledge:** Information, know-how, skills and practices that are developed, sustained and passed on from generation to generation within a community, often forming part of its cultural or spiritual identity.  
(Source: based on the definition by the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). Glossary definition as provided under Policy / Traditional Knowledge on the WIPO website) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)

**Undisturbed habitat:** *Habitat\** that is not within 500 m buffer of an anthropogenic disturbance or fire within a benchmark period. Consistent with the definition of *cumulative disturbance\**, a commonly-used benchmark for suitable boreal I forest conditions has been 40 years, however

there is uncertainty about the broad applicability of this benchmark. Different boreal forest regions are characterized by varying disturbance ecologies. A benchmark of 40 years should be used in the absence of an empirical basis for another benchmark.

**(Source: Adapted from Environment Canada 2016)**

**Uphold:** To acknowledge, respect, sustain and support.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Use rights:** Rights for the use of resources of the *Management Unit\** that can be defined by local custom, mutual agreements, or prescribed by other entities holding access rights. These rights may restrict the use of resources to specific levels of consumption or harvesting techniques.

**(Source: FSC-STD-01-001 V5-0)**

**Verifiable targets:** Specific statement, describing a desired future state or condition of an *Indicator\**, established to measure progress towards the achievement of each of the *management objectives\**. They are expressed as clear outcomes, such that their attainment can be verified and it is possible to determine whether they have been accomplished or not.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Very limited portion:** The area affected shall not exceed 0.5% of the area of the *Management Unit\** in any one year, nor affect a total of more than 5% of the area of the *Management Unit\**.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0, based on FSC-STD-01-002 V1-0)**

**Waste materials:** Unusable or unwanted substances or by-products, such as:

- Hazardous waste, including chemical waste and batteries;
- Containers;
- Motor and other fuels and oils;
- Rubbish including metals, plastics and paper; and
- Abandoned buildings, machinery and equipment.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Water bodies** (including water courses): Seasonal, temporary, and permanent brooks, creeks, streams, rivers, ponds, and lakes. Water bodies include riparian areas, *wetlands\** lakes, swamps, bogs and springs.

**(Source: FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Watershed:** An area of land that feeds water to a river, draining through the *landscape\** into tributaries and main river channels. Also called catchments, drainage basins or river basins.

**(Source: IUCN Definitions Document:**

[https://cmsdata.iucn.org/downloads/en\\_iucn\\_glossary\\_definitions.pdf](https://cmsdata.iucn.org/downloads/en_iucn_glossary_definitions.pdf))

**Wetlands:** Transitional areas between terrestrial and aquatic systems in which the water table is usually at or near the surface or the land is covered by shallow water.

**(Source: Cowardin, L.M., Carter, V., Golet, F.C., Laroe, E.T. 1979. Classification of Wetlands and Deepwater Habitats of the United States. DC US Department: Washington) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

Under the Ramsar Convention, wetlands can include tidal mudflats, natural ponds, marshes, potholes, wet meadows, bogs, *peatlands\**, freshwater swamps, mangroves, lakes, rivers and even some coral reefs.

**(Source: IUCN, No Date, IUCN Definitions – English) (FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

**Workers:** All employed persons (including men and women) including part-time and seasonal employees\* of *The Organization\**, of all ranks and categories, as well as contractors, subcontractors and overlapping or other forest license holders who are directly involved with the forest operations on the *Management Unit\*(s)\** within the scope of the certificate (e.g. forest management, planning, harvesting, road\* building, on-site processing, hauling, timber sales, etc.).

**(Source: Adapted from FSC-STD-60-004 V1-0)**

## REFERENCE LIST

### Documents Cited

Armson, K.A., Grinnell, W.R., and Robinson, F.C. (2001) History of reforestation in Ontario. In: Wagner, R.G., and Colombo, S.J. (eds.) *Regenerating the Canadian Forest: Principles and Practice for Ontario*, pp. 3-22. Fitzhenry & Whiteside, Markham, Ontario.

Borrows, J. (2015) Aboriginal Title and Private Property. *The Supreme Court Law Review: Osgoode's Annual Constitutional Cases Conference* 71. (Available at: <http://digitalcommons.osgoode.yorku.ca/sclr/vol71/iss1/5>)

British Columbia Ministry of the Environment (2015) *Guidelines and Best Management Practices (BMPs)*. <http://www.env.gov.bc.ca/wld/BMP/bmpintro.html>

Brown, E., and Senior, M.J.M. (2014) *Common Guidance for the Management and Monitoring of High Conservation Values*. HCV Resource Network.

Bryson, J.M. and Farnum K. Alston (2011) *Creating Your Strategic Plan* (Third Edition). Jossey-Bass, San Francisco CA.

Buse, L.J., Wagner, R.G., and Perrin, B. (1995) Public attitudes towards forest herbicide use and the implications for public involvement. *The Forestry Chronicle* 71(5): 596-600.

Business Dictionary (2015). best management practice (BMP)  
<http://www.businessdictionary.com/definition/best-management-practice-BMP.html>

CERFO (Centre d'enseignement et de recherche en foresterie de Sainte-Foy inc.) (ed.) (2000) *Dictionnaire de la Foresterie [Dictionary of Forestry]*. Ordre des ingénieurs forestiers du Québec & Les Presses de l'Université Laval.

Comeau, P. (2014) Effects of aerial strip spraying on mixed-wood stand structure and tree growth. *The Forestry Chronicle* 90(4): 479-485.

The Constitution Act, 1982, Schedule B to the Canada Act 1982 (UK), 1982, c 11. (Available at: <http://canlii.ca/t/ldsx>)

Dudley, N. (ed) (2008) *Guidelines for Applying Protected Area Management Categories*. N. Dudley, (ed.). Gland, Switzerland. International Union for Conservation of Nature.

Environment Canada (2008) *Scientific Review for the Identification of Critical Habitat for Woodland Caribou (Rangifer tarandus caribou), Boreal Population, in Canada*. Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.

Environment Canada (2011) *Scientific Assessment to Inform the Identification of Critical Habitat for Woodland Caribou (Rangifer tarandus caribou), Boreal Population in Canada: 2011 update*. Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.

Environment Canada (2012) *Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou (Rangifer tarandus caribou), Boreal population, in Canada*. Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series. Environment Canada, Ottawa.

Environment Canada (2014) *Recovery Strategy for the Woodland Caribou, Southern Mountain population (Rangifer tarandus caribou) in Canada*. Species at Risk Act Recovery Strategy Series. Environment Canada, Ottawa.

Environment and Climate Change Canada (2016) *Range Plan Guidance for Woodland Caribou, Boreal Population*. Species at Risk Act: Policies and Guidelines Series. Environment and Climate Change Canada, Ottawa.

FAO (2012) *Environmental impact assessment, guidelines for FAO field projects*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome.

FAO (2002) *Proceedings: Expert Meeting on Harmonizing forest-related definitions for use by various stakeholders*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, 22-25 Jan. 2002. <http://www.fao.org/docrep/005/Y4171E/Y4171E34.htm>

FAO (2016) *Free Prior and Informed Consent. An indigenous peoples' right and a good practice for local communities. Manual for project practitioners*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 51 pp.

Forman, R.T.T., and M. Godron (1986) *Landscape Ecology*. Wiley. New York.

HCV Resource Network (2013) *Common Guidance for the Identification of High Conservation Values*. HCV Resource Network. 63 pp. <https://www.hcvnetwork.org/>

Homagain, K., Shahi, C., Luckai, N., Leitch, M. F., and Bell, M. (2011) Benefit–cost analysis of vegetation management alternatives: An Ontario case study. *The Forestry Chronicle* 87(2): 260-273.

ILO (1993) *Safety in the use of chemicals at work: An ILO code of practice*. Geneva. International Labour Office.

ILO (1998) *Safety and health in forestry work: An ILO code of practice*. Geneva, International Labour Office.

ILO 169. Indigenous and Tribal Peoples Convention, (1989) (No.169) URL: [http://www.ilo.org/dyn/normlex/en/f?p=NORMLEXPUB:12100:0::NO::P\\_12100\\_INSTRUMENT\\_ID:312314](http://www.ilo.org/dyn/normlex/en/f?p=NORMLEXPUB:12100:0::NO::P_12100_INSTRUMENT_ID:312314)

Kayahara, G.J., and Armstrong, C.L. (2015) Understanding First Nations rights and perspectives on the use of herbicides in forestry: A case study from northeastern Ontario. *The Forestry Chronicle* 91(2): 126-140.

Lund, H.G. (2002) *Definitions of Old Growth, Pristine, Climax, Ancient Forests and Similar Terms (Definitions of Forest State, Stage and Origin)*. Forest Information Services. <http://old.grida.no/geo/GEO/Geo-2-408.htm>

Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: Policy Responses*. Findings of the Responses Working Group. Washington DC: Island Press, Pages 599-605.

OMNR (1986) *Survey of Artificial Regeneration in Northern Ontario: Summary Report for Northwestern, North Central and Northern Regions, Based on Field Sampling, 1984-1986*. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (as cited by Armson et al., 2001).

OMNR (1988) *Survey of Artificial Regeneration in Northern Ontario: Summary Report for Northeastern and Algonquin Regions, Based on Field Sampling, 1987-1988*. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (as cited by Armson et al., 2001).

OMNR (2014) *Forest Management Guide for Boreal Landscapes*. Published by Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources.

R. v. Powley, (2003) 2 SCR 207, 2003 SCC 43.

Stewart, C., Perpetua, G., Rayden, T., and Nussbaum, R. (2008) *Good Practice Guidelines for High Conservation Value Assessments: practical guide for practitioners and auditors*. Profest, Oxford: England.

Thiffault, N., and Roy, V. (2011) Living without herbicides in Québec (Canada): historical context, current strategy, research and challenges in forest vegetation management. *European journal of forest research* 130(1): 117-133.

Thiffault, N., Roy, V., Prigent, G., Cyr, G., Jobidon, R., and Ménétrier, J. (2003) La sylviculture des plantations résineuses au Québec. *Le naturaliste canadien* 127(1): 63-80.

Thompson, D., Leach, J., Noel, M., Odsen, S., and Mihajilovich, M. (2012) Aerial forest herbicide application: Comparative assessment of risk mitigation strategies in Canada. *The Forestry Chronicle* 88(2): 176-184.

Turner, M.G. (ed.) (1987) *Landscape Heterogeneity and Disturbance*. Springer-Verlag, New York.

UNDRIP (The United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples) (2007) The United Nations General Assembly. Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples. Print. URL: [http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)[http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)[http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)[http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)[http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)[http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)[http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS\\_en.pdf](http://www.un.org/esa/socdev/unpfii/documents/DRIPS_en.pdf)

United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) (2014) *Unasylva*. Vol 53.

UN-REDD Programme (2013) *Guidelines on Free, Prior and Informed Consent*. United Nations collaborative initiative on Reducing Emissions from Deforestation and forest Degradation, 58 pp.

Wagner, R.G. (1994) Toward integrated forest vegetation management. *Journal of Forestry* 92(11): 26-30.

Wagner, R.G., Flynn, J., and Gregory, R. (1998) Public perceptions of risk and acceptability of forest vegetation management alternatives in Ontario. *The Forestry Chronicle* 74(5): 720-727.

Wikeem, B., and Miller, V. (2006) *Invasive Plants in British Columbia Protected Lands: A Strategic Plan*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, 30 pp.



## Relevant FSC Documents

The following referenced documents are relevant for the application of this document. For references without a version number, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

FSC-DIR-20-007 FSC Directive on FSC Forest Management Evaluations  
FSC-POL-01-004 Policy for the Association of Organizations with FSC  
FSC-POL-20-003 The Excision of Areas from the Scope of Certification  
FSC-POL-30-001 FSC Pesticides Policy  
FSC-POL-30-401 FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions  
FSC-POL-30-602 FSC Interpretation on GMOs (Genetically Modified Organisms)  
FSC-PRO-01-001 The Development and Revision of FSC Normative Documents  
FSC-PRO-01-005 Processing Appeals  
FSC-PRO-01-008 Processing Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme  
FSC-PRO-01-009 Processing Policy for Association Complaints in the FSC Certification Scheme  
FSC-PRO-30-006 Ecosystem Services Procedure: Impact Demonstration and Market Tools  
FSC-PRO-60-006 Development and Transfer of NFSS to FSC P&C V5-1  
FSC-STD-01-001 FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship V5-2 EN  
FSC-STD-01-002 FSC Glossary of Terms  
FSC-STD-01-003 SLIMF Eligibility Criteria  
FSC-STD-30-005 FSC Standard for Group Entities in Forest Management Groups  
FSC-STD-60-002 Structure and Content of National Forest Stewardship Standards  
FSC-STD-60-006 Process requirements for the development and maintenance of National Forest Stewardship Standards  
FSC-GUI-60-002 SIR Guideline for Standard Developers  
FSC-GUI-60-005 Promoting Gender Equality in National Forest Stewardship Standards  
FSC Technical Series No. 2009-001. FSC Guide to integrated pest, disease and weed management in FSC certified forests and plantations  
FSC Canada. 2004 National Boreal Standard  
FSC-STD-CAN-Maritimes-2008 Certification Standards for Best Forestry Practices in the Maritimes Region  
Forest Stewardship Council Regional Certification Standards for British Columbia, 2005  
FSC Forest Stewardship Standard Great Lakes St. Lawrence Region, Draft 3, 2010